



ONLYIAS
BY PHYSICS WALLAH



BPSC
WALLAH

BPSC **SAMPOORNA**

Comprehensive Booklet for Prelims+Mains

ANCIENT **and** **MEDIEVAL INDIA**

A Detailed Coverage of Bihar Civil Services Exam Syllabus

EDITION: First

Published By:



Physics Wallah

ISBN: 978-81-19211-00-5

MRP: 0/-

Mobile App: Physics Wallah (Available on Play Store)



Website: www.pw.live

Youtube Channel: Physics Wallah - Alakh Pandey
UPSC Wallah
UPSC Wallah - Hindi Medium
PSC Wallah - UP Bihar
MPSC Wallah

Email: support@pw.live

Rights

All rights are reserved with the Publisher. No part of this book may be used or reproduced in any manner whatsoever without written permission from the author or publisher.

In the interest of the student community:

Circulation of soft copy of Book(s) in PDF or other equivalent format(s) through any social media channels, emails, etc. or any other channels through mobiles, laptops or desktop is a criminal offense. Anybody circulating, downloading, or storing, a soft copy of the book on his device(s) is in breach of the Copyright Act. Further photocopying of this book or any of its material is also illegal. Do not download or forward in case you come across any such soft copy material.

Disclaimer

A team of PW OnlyIAS experts and faculties with a deep understanding of the subject has worked hard for the creation and curation of this book.

While the content creators, editors and publisher have used their best efforts in preparing these books. The content has been checked for accuracy. As the book is intended for educational purposes, the author shall not be responsible for any errors contained in the book.

The publication has designed the content to provide accurate and authoritative information with regard to the subject matter covered.

This book and the individual contribution contained in it are protected under Copyright Act by the publisher.

(This Book shall only be used for educational purposes.)

PREFACE

A highly skilled professional team of PW ONLY IAS works arduously to ensure that the students receive the best content for the BPSC exams.

A plethora of BPSC Study Material is available in the market but PW ONLY IAS professionals are continuously working to provide supreme quality study material for our BPSC students.

From the beginning, the whole content team comprising Content Creators, Reviewers, DTP operators, Proofreaders and others is involved in shaping the material to their best knowledge and experience to produce effective content for the students.

Faculties have adopted a new style of presenting the content in easy-to-understand language and have provided the team with their guidance and supervision throughout the creation of this book.

PW ONLY IAS strongly believes in conceptual and fun-based learning. PW ONLY IAS provides highly exam-oriented content to bring quality and clarity to the students.

This book adopts a multi-faceted approach to mastering and understanding the concepts by having a rich diversity of questions asked in the examination and equipping the students with the knowledge for this competitive exam.

The main objective of the study material is to provide short, crisp, concise, and high-quality content to our students.

BOOK FEATURES

- Holistic discussion of topics, strictly as per exam syllabus
- One-stop solution for subject-wise coverage
- Diagrams, Flowcharts and Timelines for quick understanding and revision
- Integrated Preparation of Prelims and Mains stages of this exam

CONTENTS

ANCIENT INDIA

1. Pre-Historic Times 1-4	4.8 Jain Councils 22
1.1 Prehistoric Period (30,00,000 BC – 600 BC) 1	4.9 Royal Patrons of Jainism 22
1.2 Paleolithic or Old Stone Age (30,00,000 BC - 10000 BC) 1	4.10 Important Jain Literature 22
1.3 Mesolithic or Middle Stone Age (9000 BC - 4000 BC) 2	4.11 Eight Auspicious Symbols Under Jainism..... 23
1.4 Neolithic Age or New Stone Age (7000 BC - 1000 BC) 2	4.12 Jain Architecture..... 23
1.5 Chalcolithic (Metal) Age 3500 BC-1000 BC.....3	4.13 Spread of Jainism 23
1.6 Iron Age (1,000BC - 500 BC)4	4.14 Contribution of Jainism 24
2. Harappan Civilization: 2500-1750 BC.....5-10	4.15 Tirthankaras and Their Symbols..... 24
Introduction5	5. Buddhism 25-32
2.1 Indus Valley Civilization: Location, River, Excavator, Findings.....5	5.1 Philosophy of Buddhism 25
2.2 Prominent Features of Harappan Civilization8	5.2 Important Concepts Related to Buddhism.... 25
2.3 Decline9	5.3 Great Events in Buddha's Life and Symbols... 27
3. Vedic Culture: 1500 BC - 600 BC.....11-18	5.4 Buddhist Sangha and its Features..... 28
3.1 Arrival of Aryans11	5.5 Buddhist Councils 29
3.2 Rig Vedic/Early Vedic Period (1500 BC - 1000 BC)11	5.6 Schools of Buddhism 29
3.3 Later Vedic Period (1000 BC - 600 BC).....13	5.7 Miscellaneous 30
3.4 Vedic Deities14	5.8 Contribution of Buddhism 31
3.5 Vedic Texts14	5.9 Causes for the Decline of Buddhism 31
3.6 Vedic Literatures15	6. Pre-Mauryan Period: 600-300 BCE 33-38
3.7 Officers and Their Profile in Vedic Period16	6.1 Age of Mahajanapadas 33
3.8 Key Concepts.....17	6.2 The Sixteen Mahajanapadas..... 33
4. Jainism19-24	6.3 Socio-Economic Survey of Mahajanapada Period..... 35
4.1 Origin of Jainism19	6.4 The Magadha Empire 36
4.2 Factors Behind the Rise of Jainism19	6.5 Foreign Invasions..... 38
4.3 Teachings of Mahavira19	7. Mauryan Age 39-44
4.4 Vardhaman Mahavira (539 - 467 BC).....19	Introduction 39
4.5 Philosophy and Teachings of Jainism20	7.1 Sources of Information 39
4.6 Sects/Schools of Jainism21	7.2 The Mauryan Dynasty..... 39
4.7 Important Terms Related to Jainism.....22	7.3 Socio-Economic Survey of Mauryan Period 42
	7.4 Officers in Mauryan State 43
	7.5 Decline of the Mauryan Empire 43
	8. Post-Mauryan Age..... 45-49
	8.1 Source of Information 45
	8.2 Shunga Dynasty (187 BC - 78 BC) 45

8.3	Satavahana Dynasty	46	10.2	Harshavardhan (606 CE–647CE)	59
8.4	Significance of Satavahana Rule.....	46	10.3	Socio-Economic Survey of Harshavardhan Period	60
8.5	Indo-Greeks (200 BCE - 100 BCE)	47			
9.	The Gupta Period	50-58	11.	Sangam Age: The History of South India	63-66
	Introduction	50		Introduction	63
9.1	Sources of Information	50	11.1	Sangam Literature	63
9.2	Important Rulers.....	51	11.2	South Indian Dynasties.....	64
9.3	Socio-Economic Survey of Gupta Period.....	52	11.3	Sangam Period: Polity, Economy, Society, Religion and Culture	64
9.4	Decline of the Guptas.....	55	11.4	End of the Sangam Age	65
9.5	Authors/Scholars and their Works	55	11.5	Glossary.....	66
9.6	Other important concepts in Gupta	55			
9.7	The Vakatakas of the Deccan: Gupta Contemporaries.....	56	12.	South Indian Kingdoms: Pallavas, Chalukyas and Rashtrakutas.....	67-70
10.	Harshvardhan Period (606 AD- 647 AD).....	59-62	12.1	Pallavas.....	67
	Introduction	59	12.2	Chalukyas of Vatapi	68
10.1	Sources of Information	59	12.3	Ikshvakus.....	70
			12.4	The Kadamba Kingdom.....	70
			12.5	The Kalabhras.....	70

MEDIEVAL INDIA

1.	Early Medieval Period	73-86	4.	Vijayanagara Empire	98-101
1.1	North India: Rajputana Period	73	4.1	Introduction	98
1.2	South India.....	78	4.2	Important Rulers of Vijayanagara Empire ...	98
1.3	Arab Invasion (711 AD).....	81	4.3	Aspects of the Vijayanagara Empire	99
1.4	Turk Invasion.....	82	4.4	The Nayak System.....	100
1.5	Mahmud of Ghazni.....	82	4.5	Land Revenue Administration.....	100
1.6	The Ghurid Dynasty	83	4.6	Foreign Traveller During Vijayanagara Empire.....	101
1.7	Important Foreign Travellers/Envoys	84	5.	Bahmani Kingdom	102 -103
1.8	Bihar Special: Early Medieval History of Bihar.....	85	5.1	Introduction	102
2.	The Delhi Sultanate	87-95	5.2	Bahmani Sultanate	102
2.1	Introduction	87	6.	Bhakti Movement	104-108
2.2	Slave Dynasty (1206 - 1290 CE)	87	6.1	Introduction	104
2.3	Khalji Dynasty (1290-1320 AD)	88	6.2	Features of Bhakti Movement.....	104
2.4	Tughlaq Dynasty (1320 - 1413 AD).....	89	6.3	Causes of the Emergence of Bhakti Movement.....	104
2.5	Sayyid Dynasty (1414 - 1451 AD)	90	6.4	Vedanta Saints and their Contribution	105
2.6	Lodhi Dynasty (1451-1526 AD)	90	6.5	Bhakti Movement Saints and Their Contributions.....	105
2.7	Causes of the Decline of Delhi Sultanate	91	6.6	Virashaivism/Sharana Movement	107
2.8	Bihar Special: Delhi Sultanate nd Bihar.....	94			
3.	Regional Kingdoms	96-97			

6.7	Impact of Bhakti Movement.....	108	8.8	Aurangzeb (1658-1707 AD).....	118
6.8	Brahmanical Reaction Against Bhakti Movement.....	108	8.9	Successors of Aurangzeb	118
7.	Sufi Movement.....	109-111	8.10	Reasons for Decline of the Mughals	119
7.1	Introduction	109	8.11	Jagirdari System.....	120
7.2	Essential Characteristics of Sufism.....	109	8.12	Bihar during the Mughal period	120
7.3	Stages of Sufism	109	9.	Maratha State.....	124-126
7.4	Features of Sufism	109	9.1	Shahji Bhonsle.....	124
7.5	Sufism and Music	110	9.2	Shivaji Maharaj (1627 - 1680 AD)	124
7.6	Silsilas/Orders of Sufis	110	9.3	Sambhaji (1680 - 1689 AD).....	125
7.7	Sikhism in Bihar.....	110	9.4	Rajaram (1689 - 1707 AD).....	125
8.	Mughal Period	112-123	9.5	Shahu (1707- 1749 AD)	125
8.1	Introduction	112	9.6	Balaji Vishwanath (1713-1720 AD): First Peshwa	125
8.2	Babur (1526-1530 AD).....	112	10.	Maratha Confederacy.....	127-128
8.3	Humayun (1530-1540 & 1555-1556 AD)	112	10.1	Baji Rao I (1720-1740 AD).....	127
8.4	Afghan rule in Bihar	113	10.2	Balaji Baji Rao (Nana Sahib I) (1740-1761 AD)	127
8.5	Akbar (1556-1605 AD).....	115	10.3	Anglo Maratha Wars	127
8.6	Jahangir (1605-1627)	117	10.4	Popular Maratha Chieftains.....	128
8.7	Shahjahan (1628-1658 AD).....	118			

ANCIENT INDIA

1

Prehistoric Times

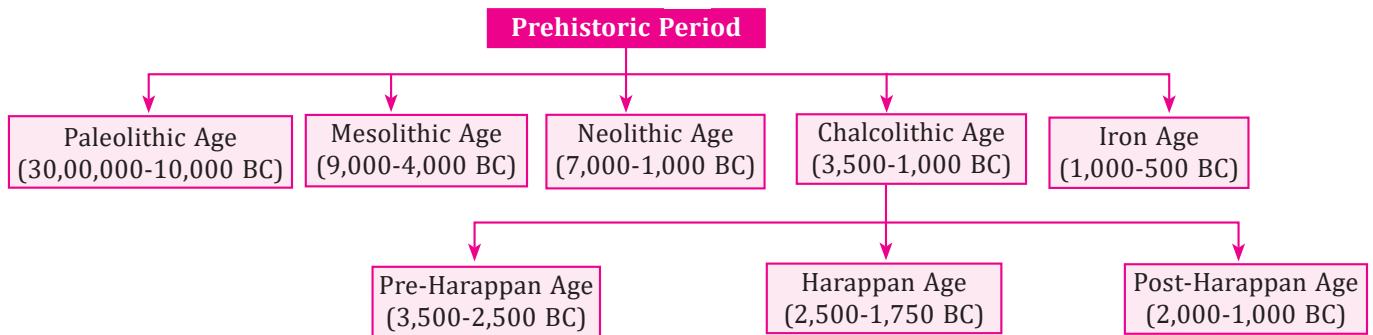


Fig. 1.1: Prehistoric Period

1.1 PRE-HISTORIC PERIOD (30,00,000 BC – 600 BC)

- It consists of **five periods**- Paleolithic, Mesolithic, Neolithic, Chalcolithic & Iron Age.
- Archaeological remains** from this period are stone tools, pottery, artefacts, and metal implements used by prehistoric people.
- Robert Bruce Foote** discovered what was probably the first Paleolithic tool discovered in India — the **Pallavaram handaxe**.
- Robert Bruce Foote** is known as the **father of Prehistoric Archaeology**.

1.2 PALEOLITHIC OR OLD STONE AGE (30,00,000 BC – 10000 BC)

- The Palaeolithic Age is the **earliest period of the Stone Age**, which developed in the **Pleistocene period or the Ice Age**.
- There was no knowledge of agriculture, house building, pottery, or any metal.
- It spread in practically all parts of India **except** the alluvial plains of the Indus and Ganga
- Quartzite men**: Since the stone tools were made of a hard rock called **quartzite**, Palaeolithic men are therefore also called **Quartzite men** in India.
- Chopper-chopping pebble culture**: The implements of this culture were found first from Sohan river valley of west **Punjab** (Pakistan), also called as **Sohan Culture**.

- Hand Axe culture**: The implements of this culture were found first in Badmadurai and Attirampakkam of Madras, so also called as **Madrasian Culture**.
- Famous sites of Old Stone Age**:
 - Soan valley on Potwar plateau
 - Siwalik hills in the north India
 - Bhimbetka in Madhya Pradesh
 - Adamgarh Hills in Narmada Valley
 - Kurnool in Andhra Pradesh
 - Attirampakkam near Chennai

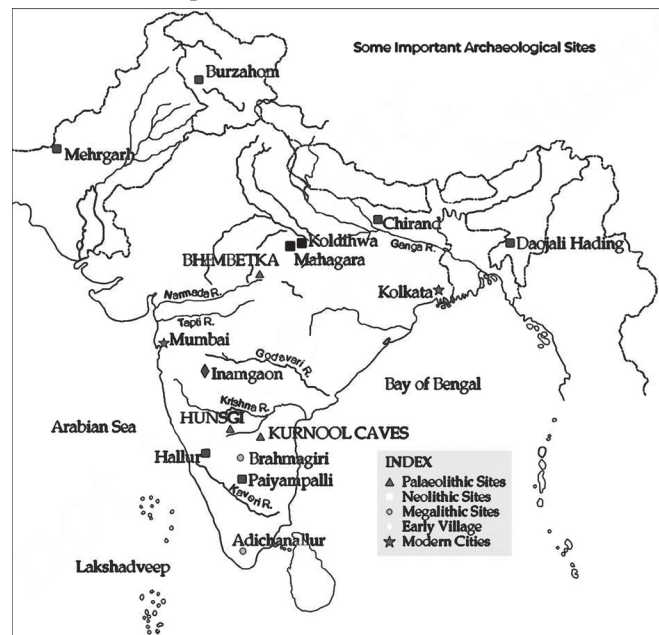


Fig. 1.2: Important Archaeological Sites in India

A. Lower Paleolithic Age (5,00,000 to 50,000 BC) (Homoeractus)

- **Evolution:** Learned to control fire for roasting meat and warding off animals. Hunting and food gathering. Lived in trees and in caves.
- **Tools:** chopper-chopping, Hand Axes and Cleavers.
- **Sites:** Soan and Sohan river valley (now in Pakistan), Didwana, (Rajasthan), Hiran Valley (Gujarat), rock shelters of Bhimbetka (MP), and Belan Valley of Mirzapur (UP).

B. Middle Paleolithic Age (50,000 - 40,000 BC) (Neanderthal)

- **Evolution:** Language was invented in this period. Men remained hunters and food gatherers.
- **Tools:** It is also known as **Flake culture** due to excessiveness of implements made from flakes. Refined and lighter tools made of harder stone material like flint were used. Diversified tools based on flakes were used, for example, blades, pointers, scrapers and borers.
- **Sites:** Soan, Narmada and Tungabhadra river valleys, Potwar plateau (between Indus and Jehlum), Sanghao Cave (near Peshawar, Pakistan).

C. Upper Paleolithic Age (40,000 - 10,000 BC) (Homo Sapiens)

- **Evolution:** Other hominin species were eliminated by this time. **Homo sapiens** first appeared at the end of this phase. There is evidence of art in the form of paintings.
- **Tools:** It is also known as **Flake-Blade culture** due to excessiveness of implements made from Flake-Blade. Even more refined and light tools. These were backed blades with two cutting edges. Blades, scrapers, and burins could be fitted in handles; Bone tools like needles, harpoons were also found.
- **Sites:** Found in Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Maharashtra, Central MP, Southern UP and Chota Nagpur Plateau. Bone tools found only at cave sites of Kurnool and Muchchatla Chintamani Gavi in Andhra Pradesh.

1.3 MESOLITHIC OR MIDDLE STONE AGE (9000 BC - 4000 BC)

- This is the **transitional phase** between the Palaeolithic and Neolithic ages.
- **No snakes are depicted in Mesolithic Paintings.**
- In India, the credit of discovery of Mesolithic archaeological material goes to John Evan.
- **Evolution:** It was the **transitional period** between the Paleolithic and Neolithic Age. People used bow and arrow and hence, big animals were hunted down easily.

First burials are reported and use of stone-ornaments also appears. Domestication of animals like sheep and goats is found. **The first human** colonization of the Ganga Plains happened during this period.

- **Tools:** **Microlith tools** i.e., tools made of micro-sized stones which were very refined. Bow and arrow and other microliths in various shapes like moon, triangular, square, rectangle, crescents and arrow-head.
- **Sites:** Bhimbetka, Mahadaha, Sarai Nahar Rai, Adamgarh (MP), Langhnaj (Gujarat), etc. Earliest cave paintings are found at Bhimbetka (UNESCO World Heritage Site).

1.4 NEOLITHIC AGE OR NEW STONE AGE (7000 BC - 1000 BC)

- In India, the credit of discovery of Neolithic archaeological material goes to **Dr. Primrose**.
- **Neolithic revolution:** **V. Gordon Childe** termed the Neolithic phase as Neolithic Revolution. It introduced a lot of important changes in man's social and economic life. The Neolithic age saw man turning into a food producer from food gatherer.
- Man lived in huts, reared cattle, developed agriculture (wheat, barley, cotton, rice etc.), used earthenware (both handmade and wheel-made).
- **Domestication of animals:** cattle, sheep and goats was also done.
- People of Neolithic age lived in **rectangular or circular houses** which were made of mud and reeds.
- **Tools:** **Sharper, symmetrical and polished stone tools** for not only hunting but agriculture also. Daggers, digging sticks, celts, grinding stones, sickle, saw, sling-stones etc. (continuous rubbing was done to smoothen the tools).
- **Sites:**
 - **Kashmir valley, Chirand** (Bihar), **Daojali Hading, Belan valley** (UP), and **Maski** etc.
 - **Chopani-Mando, Belan valley:** earliest evidence of use of pottery
 - **Burzahom:** unique rectangular chopper, domestic dogs buried with their masters.
 - **Koldihwa and Mahagara:** earliest evidence of rice cultivation in the world.
 - **South India:** **Maski, Brahmagiri, Hallur and Kodekal** in Karnataka, **Paiyampalli** in TN and **Utnur** in Andhra Pradesh.
 - **Koldihwa** (Belan valley): Presence of a **three-fold Neolithic, Chalcolithic and Iron Age settlements**
 - **Mehrgarh** (Pakistan): Earliest Neolithic site known as the **Breadbasket of Balochistan**.

Bihar Special

Pre-Historic Period or Paleolithic Age in Bihar

- **Weapons related to the Stone Age:** The weapons associated with this period include stone knives, axes and spears, etc. Their remains have been found in Munger and Nalanda districts and from many places in undivided Bihar (present day Jharkhand).
- In the Middle Stone Age, samples of tools are also found along with weapons because by that time primitive man had attained greater proficiency in the use of stones. The weapons and tools of this period are made of small stones. They have a better shape and have a ghat and a tip. Their samples have also been found from Munger and Nalanda, which gives evidence of the continuous sequence of development of human life at these places.
- The remains of the Neolithic age have been obtained from the places located in the plains. Among these Chirand (Saran), Chechar or Shwetpur (Vaishali), Senuar (Rohtas), Maner (Patna) are the main centres. Not only very small tools made of stone (microliths) but also tools and weapons made of bone have been obtained from here. It is important that all these places are situated on the banks of rivers.
- **Cave Paintings:** Another important source of information about the Stone Age are Cave Paintings. Such paintings have been received from Kaimur hills, Nawada and Jamui in Bihar. There is a lot of similarity in the cave paintings found in Central India. Scenes of human activities like hunting, dance etc. are also seen in these paintings along with natural objects. From these, the life style of early humans can be understood.
- **Chalcolithic remains are found in Sonpur and Taradih (Gaya), Chirand (Saran), Chechar (Vaishali), Maner (Patna) and Senuar (Rohtas).**
- **Types of tools of Early Pre-Stone Age and Middle and Late Pre-Stone Age found in Bihar:** Axes made of rough stone, knives and scabbards.
- **Types of Neolithic tools in Bihar:** Small size stone and bone tools

1.5 CHALCOLITHIC (COPPER) AGE 3500 BC - 1000 BC

- The **first metal age of India** is called Chalcolithic Age. It was also called the **Stone-Copper Age**.

Chalcolithic age is divided into 3 Stages

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------|
| ● Pre-Harappan Age | ● 3500 BC-2500 BC |
| ● Harappan Age | ● 2500 BC-1750 BC |
| ● Post-Harappan Age | ● 2000 BC-1000 BC |

- **Chalcolithic: Chalco + Lithic** was derived from the Greek words khalkos + lithos which means copper and stone or Copper Age
- **Chalcolithic cultures had grown in river valleys.** Harappan culture is considered part of Chalcolithic culture.
- The Chalcolithic culture corresponds to the farming communities: **Kayatha, Ahar or Banas, Malwa, and Jorwe.**
- **Evolution:**
 - Settled & community life.
 - Crops cultivated were: barley, wheat, lentil, bajra, jowar, ragi millets, green pea, green and black gram and cotton.
 - Rice and Fish was used as food.
 - Technically separate but Harappan civilization evolved out of the Chalcolithic Culture.
 - Unaware of: Iron, horse and script.
 - Marks the beginning of use metal in place of stone yet **burnt brick** was generally **absent**.
 - High Child Mortality is indicated by a large number of child burials.
- **Tools/ Idols:**
 - Knives, axes, fishing hooks, chisels, pins, and rods were made of copper and its alloys.
 - Beads of semi-precious stones and the **Terracotta image of Mother Goddess are reported.**
 - Dead were buried in urns; at times with tools and objects.
- **Crafts and Pots:**
 - Copper and stone tools were used simultaneously.
 - The chalcolithic people were expert coppersmiths. Weavers were present.
 - Used Black and Red Ware. Painted pottery, in black pigment; decorated with different shapes.
- **Sites:**
 - In India it was mainly found in South-Eastern Rajasthan, Western part of Madhya Pradesh and Maharashtra, and in South and East India.
 - Several bronze and copper objects, terracotta figurines and pottery were found at **Paiyampalli in Tamil Nadu.**
 - **Important sites:** Navdatoli, Jorwe, Daimabad, Ahar Banas, Malwa, Inamgaon, Songaon, Nashik, Mehgam, Kausambi, Alamgirpur, Ropar etc.

Chalcolithic Cultures	Sites
Ahara Culture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Aahar (Rajasthan), Balathal, Gilund etc. The distinctive feature is black and red ware.
Kayatha Culture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Located in Chambal and its tributaries, the sturdy red slipped ware with chocolate designs is the main feature.
Malwa Culture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Narmada & its tributaries in Gujarat. One of the largest Chalcolithic settlements.
Savalda Culture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dhulia district of Maharashtra.
Prabhas & Rangpur Culture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Both are derived from the Harappa culture. The polished red ware is the hallmark of this culture.

Bihar Special

Chalcolithic Age in Bihar

- Chalcolithic remains are found in **Sonpur and Taradih (Gaya), Chirand (Saran), Chechar (Vaishali), Maner (Patna) and Senuar (Rohtas)**.

1.6 IRON AGE (1,000BC - 500 BC)

- The Chalcolithic age is followed by the Iron Age.
- Iron is frequently **referred to in the Vedas**.
- The Iron Age of the southern peninsula is often related to **megalithic burials**. Megalith means large stone.
- The burial pits covered with these stones are extensively found in South India.

Important Megalithic Sites

- Hallur** and **Maski** in Karnataka, **Nagarjunakonda** in Andhra Pradesh and **Adichchanallur** in Tamil Nadu.

PREVIOUS YEAR QUESTIONS

- The earliest evidence of animal husbandry and agriculture has been found in India [B.P.S.C. (Pre)2018]
 - Figs
 - Arrogantly
 - Kili Gul Mohammad
 - Mehargarh**
 - None of the above/More than one of the above
- Which of the following is also called the Chalcolithic Age? [B.P.S.C. (Pre)2000]
 - Palaeolithic
 - Neolithic age
 - Chalcolithic Age**
 - Iron Age
- The people of which of the following period were called Quartzite Man?
 - Chalcolithic period
 - Paleolithic period**
 - Middle Stone Age
 - Neolithic age
 - None of the above/More than one of the above
- From where have the evidences of pre stone age been found in Bihar?
 - Chirand (Saran)
 - Rohtas
 - Munger
 - Nalanda
 - None of the above/More than one of the above**
- To which of the following period Malwa culture is related?
 - Neolithic age
 - Iron Age
 - Middle Stone Age
 - Chalcolithic period**
 - None of the above/More than one of the above



2

Harappan Civilization: 2500–1750 BC

INTRODUCTION

- **The Harappan/Indus Valley civilisation** was the **first urban civilisation in South Asia**, contemporaneous with the civilisations of Mesopotamia and Egypt. It was larger than ancient Egypt and Mesopotamia civilisations.
- **First site excavated:** Harappa site by **Dayaram Sahni in 1921**.
- **John Marshall:** first scholar to use the term Indus Civilisation.
- **Most accepted timeline:** 2500 BC - 1750 BC (Carbon-14 Dating).
- **Period:** India Civilization belongs to **proto-historic period- Chalcolithic Age/Bronze Age**.
- **Heartland of Indus Civilization:** Harappa-Ghaggar-Mohenjo-Daro axis.
- **Indus sites found in Afghanistan:** Shortughai and Mundigak.
- **Capital cities:** Harappa, Mohenjo-Daro.
- **Port cities:** Lothal, Sutkagendor, Allahdino, Balakot, Kuntasi.
- **Area covered:** Harappan civilisation was triangular in shape and was largest among the three ancient urban civilisations, the other two being **ancient Egypt** and **Mesopotamia** (present day Iraq). It roughly covers modern day **Rajasthan, Punjab, Haryana, Gujarat, and Pakistan**.
- **Father of Indian archaeology:** **Alexander Cunningham**, the **first** Director-General of the Archaeological Survey of India (ASI).



Fig. 2.1: Phases of Harappan Civilization

Additional Information

- Northernmost site: **Manda** (Jammu-Kashmir)
- Southernmost site: **Daimabad** (Maharashtra)
- Easternmost site: **Alamgirpur** (Uttar Pradesh)
- Western-most site: **Sutkagendor** (Pakistan-Iran border).
- Largest site of Indus civilization: **Mohenjo-Daro**
- Largest Indian site of Indus civilization: **Rakhigarh**
- **Oldest script in Indian subcontinent:** Harappan script
- **Oldest deciphered script:** Brahmi script
- **Shamans** are men and women who claim magical and healing powers, as well as an ability to communicate with the other world.

2.1 INDUS VALLEY CIVILIZATION: LOCATION, RIVER, EXCAVATOR, FINDINGS

Site	Features	
Harappa (first archaeological site to be discovered)	State	Pakistan (Punjab)
	River	Ravi
	Excavator	Dayaram Sahni (1921)
	Findings	Granaries, Red sandstone Male torso, Stone symbols of Lingam and Yoni, Painted pottery, Mother Goddess, Dice.

Mohenjo-daro	State	Pakistan (Sindh)
	River	Indus
	Excavator	R. D. Banerji (1922), E. Mackay, Kashinath Dixit, Sir John Marshall (1930)
	Findings	Largest site of Indus civilization, Post cremation burial, Great Granary, Great Bath (largest building of civilization), Seal with Pashupati and mother goddess, Bronze dancing girl.
Chanhudaro	State	Pakistan (Sindh), near Mohenjo-Daro
	River	Indus
	Excavator	N.G. Mazumdar (1931) and E. Mackay
	Findings	Inkpot, Lipstick, Metal workers, Shell-ornament makers and bead makers shop, dog's paw imprint on brick, Terracotta model of bullock cart, Bronze toy cart.
Lothal	State	Gujarat (Ahmedabad District, at the head of the Gulf of Cambay)
	River	Bhogava and Sabarmati river confluence
	Excavator	S Rao in 1953.
	Findings	Important naval trade site , Cremation site, Dockyard, Granaries, Rice husk, Double burial (male female together)
Dholavira	State	Gujarat
	River	Luni
	Excavator	RS Bisht in 1985 (as per NCERT). Some books mention J.P. Joshi (1990-91)
	Findings	Unique water harnessing system and its storm water drainage system, only site divided in 3 parts, Megalithic stone circle, giant water reservoirs
Surkotada	State	Gujarat
	Excavator	J.P. Joshi (1964)
	Findings	Only site with bones of horse, Oval grave, Pot burials, Soldiers sign on potsherd
Kalibangan (Black Bangles)	State	Rajasthan
	River	Ghaggar
	Excavator	Amlanand Ghosh (1953) Dr. B. B. Lal and B. K. Thapar (1961)
	Findings	Bangle factory, Ploughed field surface, Camel bones, Fire altars.
Banawali	State	Haryana
	River	Ghaggar
	Excavator	R.S. Bist (1973-74)
	Findings	Oval shaped settlement , Lack of systematic drainage system, Barley grains, Lapis Lazuli, Fire altars, Only city with Radial streets; Centre of pre-Harappan, Mature Harappan as well as Late Harappan civilization.

Ropar	State	Punjab
	River	Sutlej
	Excavator	Y.D. Sharma (1955-56)
	Findings	Dog buried with human oval pit burials, copper axe, first site to be excavated after independence
Rakhigarhi	State	Haryana
	Findings	Largest Indian site of Indus valley civilization. Granary, cemetery, drains, terracotta bricks. Shows all three phases of Harappa Culture.
Rangpur	State	Gujarat (Near Lothal)
	River	Madar River
	Excavator	M.S. Vatsa (1931) S.R. Rao (1953-54)
	Findings	Remains of both pre-Harappan and mature Harappan culture; Yellow and gray color pots of pre Harappan people.
Alamgirpur	State	Uttar Pradesh
	River	Hindon
	Excavator	Y.D. Sharma (1958)
	Findings	Broken copper blade, ceramic items and impression of cloth on a trough.
Daimabad	State	Maharashtra
	River	Pravara
	Excavator	Y.D. Sharma (1958)
	Findings	Bronze images (charioteer with chariot, ox, elephant and rhinoceros)
Koti-Diji	State	Sindh (Pakistan)
	River	Sindh
	Excavator	NG Mazumdar
	Findings	Bronze images (charioteer with chariot, ox, elephant and rhinoceros)
Amri	State	Sindh (Pakistan)
	River	Sindh
	Excavator	Ghurey (1835) Fazal Ahmed (1955)
	Findings	Pre-Harappan settlement; Transitional culture between pre and post- Harappan culture; Actual remains of rhinoceros, trace of jhangar culture in Late Harappan fire altars.
Suktagendor	State	Sindh (Pakistan)
	River	Dasht/Dashak River
	Excavator	A Stein, George Dales
	Findings	Ash filled pot, copper axe , earthen bangles & pottery; Originally port but later cut off from sea due to coastal upliftment; Had trade links with Babylon.

2.2 PROMINENT FEATURES OF HARAPPAN CIVILIZATION

1. Town Planning and Structures

- The towns were in a **rectangular grid pattern** with roads at **right angles**.
- Used **burnt mud bricks** joined with gypsum mortar (contemporary Egyptian dried bricks were used).
- The city was **divided in two parts**, the city on raised platform, known as **Upper citadel** & the lower town known as **Lower citadel** (working class quarters). Fortified citadel was found, except in Chanhudaro.
- Most buildings have **private wells and properly ventilated bathrooms**.
- **Do not have large monumental structures such as temples or palaces** for rulers unlike Egyptian and Mesopotamian Civilization.
- Evidence of an Advanced **drainage** system.
- At sites such as **Dholavira** and **Lothal (Gujarat)**, the entire settlement was **fortified**, and sections within the town were also **separated by walls**. The Citadel within Lothal was not walled off, but was built at a height.

2. Agriculture

- **Main crops:** Wheat and Barley. Evidence of cultivation of rice in Lothal and Rangpur (Gujarat) only.
- **Other crops:** Dates, Mustard, Sesamum, Cotton, Rai, Peas etc.
- **First to produce cotton in the world** and used it for textiles, Called **Sindon** by the Greeks.
- Used animal drawn wooden plough, and stone sickles.
- **Gabarbands or Nalas** enclosed by dams were found but **channel or canal irrigation was probably not practiced**.
- Produced **sufficient food grains** and **cereals** were received as **taxes** from peasants and stored in granaries for wages and emergencies same as Mesopotamia.

3. Domestication of Animals

- **Animals:** Oxen, buffaloes, goats, sheep, and pigs, dogs, cats, asses and camels domesticated.
- **Humped bulls** were favored by the Harappans.
- **Neither horse centered nor** were they **aware of it**, but **evidence of horses** are found in **Surkotada, Mohenjo-Daro and Lothal**.
- Lion was not known.
- **Elephants and Rhinoceros (Amari)** were well known.

4. Technology and Craft

- This is known as the **first urbanization in India**.
- Along with stone, they were well **acquainted with copper, silver, gold and bronze** (occasionally mixed arsenic with copper instead of tin).
- **Iron was not known** to the people.
- **Important crafts:** spinning (Spindle whorls), bricklaying, boat-making, seal making, terracotta manufacturing (potter's wheel), goldsmiths, bead making.
- They were **aware of the use of the wheel**.

5. Trade and Commerce

- The importance of Trade is established by the presence of **Granaries, seals, a uniform script, and regulated weights and measures**.
- They engaged in **inter-regional as well as foreign trade**. Sumerian texts refer to trade relations with **Meluha** i.e. ancient name given to Indus region & mentions two intermediate trading stations-**Dilmun (Bahrain) & Makan (Makran coast)**.
- Used **boats and bullock-carts** for transportation.
- **No metallic money** in circulation and trade was conducted by means of barter.
- **Exports:** Agricultural products, cotton goods, terracotta figurines, beads from Chanhudaro, conch-shell from Lothal, ivory products, copper, etc.
- **Import:** Gold, Silver, Copper, Tin, Jade, Steatite
- **Harappan Imports sources:**
 - **Gold:** Afghanistan, Iran, Kolar (South India);
 - **Copper:** Khetri (Rajasthan), Balochistan;
 - **Tin:** Afghanistan, Iran;
 - **Lapis lazuli:** Afghanistan;
 - **Jade:** Pamir;
 - **Turquoise:** Khorasan;
 - **Steatite:** Tapi Chahya (Iran);
 - **Bitumen:** Balochistan, Mesopotamia;
 - **Lead:** South India.

6. Social Organization

- **Hierarchy in urban habitation.** Merchants and priests were an important class of this period.
- Harappans were fashion conscious. Different hairstyles and wearing a beard were popular.
- The use of **cosmetics** was common (Cinnabar, lipstick and collyrium)
- Necklaces, filets, armlets and finger rings were **worn by both men and women** but bangles, girdles, anklets, ear-rings were **worn by women only**.
- **Beads** were made from gold, copper, bronze, cornelian, quartz, steatite, lapis lazuli etc. - naturalistic animal models as pin-heads and beads.

7. Polity

- **Central authority** may have contributed to uniform culture.
- **No clear idea** of an organized force or standing army.
- **Priests did not rule in Harappa** as they did in the cities of lower Mesopotamia but were possibly ruled by a class of merchants.

8. Religious Practices

- **Seal: Male deity Pashupati Mahadeva (proto-siva)**, three-horned heads, and is represented in the **sitting posture of a yogi**, surrounded by an **Elephant, Tiger, Rhinoceros, and Buffalo**, and **two deer** at his feet.
- Harappan was a predominantly **secular civilization**.
- Prevalence of the **Phallus (Lingam) and Yoni**, two deer was on Pashupati Seal.
- Chief female deity was **mother Goddess**. They worshiped both male and female deities.
- The people of the Indus region also **worshiped trees** (pipal), **fire and animals** (unicorn, humped bull etc).
- Harappans **believed in ghosts and evil forces**. They used amulets against them.
- **Burials:** At burials in Harappan sites the **dead were generally laid in pits**. Some graves contain **pottery and ornaments**, perhaps indicating a belief that these could be used in the afterlife. **Jewelry has been found in burials of both men and women**.

9. Script

- **Oldest script** in Indian subcontinent.
- **Pictographic script also found**, yet to be deciphered.
- Writing was **Boustrophedon** - writing from right to left in one line & then left to right in the next line.

10. Pottery

- **Plain pottery is more common** than painted ware and is generally of red clay, and is uniformly sturdy and well baked.
- The painted pottery is also known as **Red and Black Pottery** as it used red color to paint the background and glossy black paint was used to draw designs and figures on the red background.
- **Trees, birds, animal figures and geometrical patterns** were the recurring themes of the paintings.
- Most of the pottery is **wheel-made**. This implies they were well aware of the wheel.
- Rare **polychrome pottery** has also been found (geometric patterns in red, black, green, rarely white and yellow).

11. Seals and Sealings

- Most of the seals are **square shaped** (2 × 2 square inches) made mostly from **Steatite**.

- Seals had an **animal (except cow and horse) or human figure on one side** and an inscription on the opposite side or inscriptions on both the sides.
- Seals were primarily used for **commercial purposes**, as an amulet, as a form of identification, for **educational purposes** as well.
- Seals with symbols similar to **Swastika** design have also been found.
- The **round Persian Gulf seal** found in Bahrain sometimes carries Harappan motifs.
- Interestingly, local **Dilmun** weights followed the Harappan standard.

12. Art

- **Bronze Casting:**
 - Practiced on a wide scale using the **lost wax or Cire Perdue** technique.
 - They mainly consist of **human and animal figures**. Example: **Dancing Girl**. She stands in a **Tribhanga** dancing posture.
- **Stone Statues:**
 - Bearded man: found in **Mohenjo-Daro** and made of **Steatite**, interpreted as a priest.
- **Red sandstone:**
 - Figure of a male torso is found in Harappa and made of Red sandstone.
- **Terracotta Figures:**
 - Found are less in number and crude in shape and form. Examples: Mother Goddess, mask of horned deity, toys, etc.
- **Weights and Measures:**
 - **Cubical weights** in graduated sizes. These weights conform to the **standard Harappan binary weight system** that was used in all of the settlements.

2.3 DECLINE

- After 2000 BC Indus Valley Civilization declined & gradually faded away. Causes of the decline of this civilization have not been firmly established.
- **Possible reasons** – declined soil fertility, depression in land, Aryans invasion, decline of trade, Floods, Earthquake etc.
- Most acceptable reason is **ecological imbalance**.

Bihar Special Note:- Remains of Indus Valley Civilization have not been found in Bihar. Nevertheless, some remains of the Chalcolithic period have been obtained from Bihar in the form of pottery.

Bihar Special: Forms of Pottery

- The history of the first developed civilization of the Indian subcontinent i.e. the Indus Valley Civilization is found in the Chalcolithic Age. The history of the Indus Civilization appears in several phases, but its most developed phase lasted from 2500 to 1500 BC. It extended to Gujarat, Rajasthan, Haryana and western Uttar Pradesh. No remains of the Indus Valley Civilization have been found in Bihar. Still, Chalcolithic remains are found in Sonpur and Taradih (Gaya), Chirand (Saran), Chechar (Vaishali), Maner (Patna) and Senuar (Rohtas).
- **Forms of pottery:** Many objects of terracotta i.e. baked clay have been obtained from the cities of Indus civilization. Along with this, a new series of archaeological evidence begins, whose developed phase is presented in the form of Colored Pottery or Earthenware. There are three forms of such pottery which have been gradually developed:
 - **After 9th century BC:** Red & Black Ware (Red and black colored pottery)
 - **From 1200 BC - 600 BC:** Painted Gray Ware
 - **700 BC - 200 BC:** Northern Black Polished Ware found in Northern India
- The remains of the above mentioned pottery have been found from different places in Bihar. In this way, evidences of human living are available in Bihar from the very beginning of human life.

PREVIOUS YEAR QUESTIONS

1. What is the most important feature of the Indus Valley Civilization? [B.P.S.C. (Pre)2017]
(a) Building made of burnt bricks
(b) First real arch
(c) Place of worship
(d) Art and Architecture
(e) None of the above/More than one of the above
2. Which of the following Harappan site is in Gujarat? [B.P.S.C. (Pre)2022]
(a) Lothal (b) Dabarkot
(c) Kalibanga (d) Rakhigarhi
(e) None of the above/More than one of the above
3. From which of the following Harappan site 'terracotta' solution was found?
(a) Dholavira (b) Banawali
(c) Kalibanga (d) Lothal
(e) None of the above/More than one of the above
4. In which of the following Harappan cities, traces of plowed fields have been found?
(a) Kalibanga (b) Dholavira
(c) Mohenjo-Daro (d) Lothal
(e) None of the above/More than one of the above
5. Which color was commonly used on pottery in Harappa? [40th B.P.S.C. (Pre)1995]
(a) Red (b) Blue-green
(c) Pandu (d) Blue
(e) None of the above/More than one of the above



3

Vedic Culture: 1500 BC - 600 BC

3.1 ARRIVAL OF ARYANS

- With the advent of Aryans **began the history of Vedic Period (1500 BC - 600 BC)**.
- The original home of the Aryans is a **debatable question** and there are several views. Aryans originally lived in the **Steppes region**. Later they moved to **central Asia** and then came to the **Punjab region of India** around 1500 BC.
- Vedic period is divided into **Early Vedic or Rigvedic (1500 BC - 1000 BC) & Later Vedic (1000 BC - 600 BC)** periods.
- The name 'Aryan' appears in **Hittite inscription (Anatolia)**, **Kassite inscription (Iraq)** & **Mittani inscription (Syria)**.
- An Iranian text, **Zend Avesta**, talks about names of Aryan Gods like **Indra, Varuna**, etc.
- **Language**: spoke the Indo-Aryan language, Sanskrit.
- The word **Veda** is derived from the root **vid**, which means **to know**. The term 'Veda' signifies **superior knowledge**.
- The rise of Buddhism and Jainism was the direct result of this socio-economic problem arising due to Vedic Culture.

Boghazkoi Inscription

- Mentioning four Vedic gods – **Indra, Varuna, Mitra, Nasatyas** – **proves Central Asian Theory** as their homeland.

3.2 RIG VEDIC/EARLY VEDIC PERIOD (1500 BC - 1000 BC)

- The Main source of information about this age is the **Rig Veda** (10 Mandalas and 1028 Hymns).
- Mandalas/Chapters from 2 to 8 are called **Saptarishi Mandalas** as these are composed by the **seven great sages**.
- Mandalas 2 to 7 form the earliest portions of the Rigveda while 1 and 10 were latest additions.
- **10th Mandala** has the famous **Purush Sukta** that describes cosmic creation (Adi Purush) along with the **4-fold Varna System**.

- **The 3rd Mandala**, composed by **Vishwamitra**, contains **Gayatri Mahamantra** addressed to **Goddess Savitri**.
- **Geographical Expansion**:
 - Early Vedic people or Aryans settled in the land of seven rivers, called **Sapta Sindhu**: Sindhu (Indus), Vitasta (Jhelum), Asikani (Chenab), Parushni (Ravi), Bipasa (Beas), Sutudri (Satluj), and Saraswati (Ghaggar).
 - Their region covered present day parts of **Afghanistan, Punjab and Haryana**.
 - **Sindhu (Indus) is the most mentioned and Saraswati is the most revered (holy) river**.
 - Saraswati Valley was called **Brhmavarta**.
 - **The Himalayas** were called Himavat.
 - **Hindu Kush** was called Munjavant.
- **Society**:
 - Rig Vedic communities comprised populations called **Janas**.
 - Society was divided into **Aryans and Non-Aryans**; non-Aryans were called **Dasas and Dasyus**.
 - It was an **egalitarian society**. Unlike the later Vedic period, social divisions were **not rigid** during the Rig Vedic period.
 - Rig Vedic society was **patriarchal**.
 - Basic unit of society was **family or Graham**. The head of the family was known as **Grahapathi**.
 - **Slaves** were used for domestic purposes & not for agriculture.
 - The term **Varna is used** in Rigveda with reference to **Aryans & Dasa** having fair & dark complexion respectively.
 - **Women poets**: Viswara, Lopamudra, Ghosha, Sikta, Nivavari, and Apala were female sages of the time and contributed to the composition of Rig Veda.
 - Women could even attend the popular assemblies.
 - **Child Marriage and Sati were absent** and a special widow-remarriage, called **Niyoga** (levirate) was prevalent. This was done to increase the population of the **Jana**.
 - Two Drinks – **Soma & Sura** – Soma was sanctioned by religion & was drunk at sacrifices. Sura was disapproved by priests.

- A wealthy person was known as **Gomat** and the daughter called **Duhitri** which means one who milks the cow.
- **Favorite pastimes:** Chariot racing, horse racing, dicing, music and dance.
- **Monogamy** was generally practiced while **polygamy** was prevalent among the royal and noble families
- Women were given **equal opportunities** as men for their spiritual and intellectual development.
- A variety of **ornaments were used by both** men and women.
- The **eating of cow's meat was prohibited** since it was a sacred animal.
- **Political System:**
 - The basic unit of political organization was **kula or family**.
 - Rig Vedic polity was normally **monarchical** and the succession was **hereditary**.
 - The **Purohita** or domestic priest was the first ranking official.
 - Janas were headed by a **Rajana** who was assisted by Purohit, Gramani and Senani and popular bodies like **Sabha, Samiti, Vidhata, Gana** and **Sardha** were present.
 - **Sabha** had few chiefs while **Samiti** was a larger body.
 - **Vidhata** was the oldest assembly.
 - **Janas** were further divided into **Vis** and **Vis** in turn was divided into many **Kul** or **Kutumb**. Kul has **Griha** as its unit and **Kulapa** as its head while the **Griha** was headed by **Grihapati** or **Dampati**.
 - **Gaun** was the place where cattle were kept and **Gavishthi** was a quest or war for cows.
 - Group of **Kulas** made a **Gram** and **Gram** was headed by **Gramani**.
 - **Vajrapati:** Had authority over a large land and was leader of Kulupa & Graminis.
 - **Rajana** ruled over his people (Jana) and not over any specified area of land and hence, was called their protector (Gopa Janasya or Gopati Janasya).
 - There were **few non-monarchical states**, whose head was **Ganapati or Jyestha**.
 - **Rajana** had no standing army and bureaucracy too was absent. Military functions were performed by tribal groups called – **Vrat, Gana, Grama, Sardha**.
 - **Tribal kingdoms:** Bharatas, Matsyas, Yadus and Purus.
 - The **Battle of Ten Kings** (Dasrajan war) was fought on the banks of **Ravi river** for protection of wealth i.e. **cow** and **cattle** and was won by **Rajana Sudas** of **Bharat Jana** (tribe).
 - **Right to property existed**.
 - Rig Vedic Aryans used the **coat of mail and helmet in warfare**.
- **Economy:**
 - Rig Vedic society was **pastoral** and secondary occupation was **agriculture**. Cattle was the main form of wealth;
 - Agriculture production was for **consumption only**. They had better **knowledge of agriculture**. Rigveda mentions wooden ploughshare.
 - **Yava** was the common name for any grain.
 - **Bali** was a voluntary gift from producers to the **Rajana**.
 - Trade was conducted on a barter **system**. In the later times, gold coins called **Nishka** were used as media of exchange in large transactions. Coins were not known.
 - Neither tax was imposed nor treasury was maintained.
 - **Copper tools** of this era are reported from Punjab and Haryana.
 - **Ayas** is the common name used for any metal. Gold was called **Hiranya**.
 - Aryan introduced **spoked wheels**.
 - **Horses** played a significant role in their life. Rig Veda has mentioned a horse-drawn **chariot with spoked wheels**.
 - **Economic activities:** Hunting, carpentry, tanning, weaving, chariot-making, metal smeltery etc.
 - **Pottery type:** Ochre Colored Pottery and Painted Grey Ware (PGW).
- **Religious Aspect:**
 - **Important Rig Vedic gods:** Prithvi (Earth), Agni (Fire), Vayu (Wind), Varuna (Rain) and Indra (Thunder). Indra was the most popular.
 - **Other important gods:** Rudra, Dyaus, Ashwin, Yama and Soma.
 - **Female gods:** Aditi, Sindhu and Ushas.
 - Agni was regarded as an **intermediary** between the gods and people.
 - **Elaborate rituals** were followed during the worship.
 - **Chanting of mantras** was an important part of the ritual.
 - Sacrifices were practiced mainly for **praja** and **pashu** i.e. increasing population, protecting cattle, birth of male child and against disease. Magic and Omen were not prevalent.
 - Maharishi **Vasistha** & **Vishwamitra** were important priests.

3.3 LATER VEDIC PERIOD (1000 BC - 600 BC)

- Sources of Information about this phase are: **Sam Veda, Yajur Veda and Atharva Veda.**
- **Other sources:**
 - **Brahmanas:** Detailed commentaries and explanations on the Vedas.
 - **Aranyakas (forest books):** Explains metaphysics & symbolism of sacrifice.
 - **Upanishads:** Books on philosophy or deeper knowledge about **Aatma, Brahma** etc. They are **anti-ritualistic**.
- The motto **Satyameva Jayate** written in **Devnagari script** below the profile of **Lion Capital** is a part of the State Emblem of India. It is taken from the **Mundaka Upanishad**.
- **Geographical Expansion:**
 - Western Ganga-Valley was called '**Aryavarta**'.
 - **Arabian Sea** and the **Indian Ocean**, Several **Himalayan peaks** and **Vindhya** mountains (indirectly) are mentioned.
 - **Growth of large kingdoms:** **Kuru** (famous rulers: Parikshat and Janamejaya) and **Panchala** (popular king: Pravahana Jaivali) kingdoms. **Kosala, Videha** (King: Janaka; Scholar in court: Yajnavalkya) and **Kasi** (King: Ajatasatru) came into prominence.
 - **Later Vedic texts also refer to the three divisions of India:** **Aryavarta** (Northern India), **Madhyadesa** (Central India) and **Dakshinapatha** (Southern India).
 - **Easternmost tribal kingdoms:** Magadha, Anga and Vanga.
- **Society:**
 - **The 4-fold varna system** (Brahmins, Kshatriyas, Vaisyas and Sudras) and appearance of several **jatis** or castes made the **social system complex**.
 - **Untouchability** appeared; **women's position degraded** as they no longer got formal education.
 - **Gotra** was the place where cattle resided together with 'janas' and later developed into an identity for the **janas**.
 - **Nishad, Chandala** and **Shabar** were the untouchables mentioned. Guests were called **Goghna** (cow-killer).
 - **Niyoga** too was considered a negative activity.
 - Male members of the upper three varnas were called **dvija** or twice born. Only these were entitled to **Upanayan** i.e. wearing the sacred thread.
 - Women like **Gargi and Maitreyi** accomplished in the knowledge arena; Gargi outwitted Yajnavalkya in a philosophical discourse.
- Child marriages had become common. According to the **Aitareya Brahmana** a daughter has been described as a source of misery.
- Institution of **Gotra** & practice of **gotra exogamy** appeared.
- **Maitrayani Samhita** mentions 3 evils – liquor, women and dice.
- **Political System:**
 - **Janas** evolved to become **Janapadas**. **Hastinapur** and **Indraprastha** were capitals of **Kuru** janapada. Frequent battles among these janapadas were fought for territory.
 - Authority of the **rajana** became more evident and a support staff called **ratnin**; they were 12 jewels of the king, working for **rajana**.
 - Chiefship became **hereditary**. Still, there was **no standing army**.
 - **Rajana** started various sacrifices like **Rajsuya** (consecration ceremony), **Ashwamedh** (horse sacrifice) and **Vajpeya** (chariot race).
 - **Kings assumed titles:** Rajavisvajanan, Ahilabhuvanapathi, (lord of all earth), Ekraat and Samrat (sole ruler).
 - Dependence on **Sabha** and **Samiti** reduced. **Vidhata** completely disappeared.
 - **Women lost their political rights** of attending assemblies.
 - Term **Rashtra**, indicating territory first appeared in this period.
 - **Rajana** assumed titles like Samrat, Ekraat, Sarvbhumi, and Virat.
- **Economy:**
 - Later Vedic culture is also called **Painted Grey Ware (PGW) – Iron Phase culture**.
 - **Iron (krishna/shyama ayas)** was discovered and **use of fire** for clearing forest for cultivation increased.
 - **Tin, lead, silver, Iron, gold, bronze, and copper** were known to Later Vedic people.
 - Predominantly pastoral society of Early Vedic times had **become agricultural** - Wheat, Barley, Rice, Beans, Moong, Urad and Sesamum were cultivated.
 - Surplus produce led to **Bali and Bhaga (1/6th or 1/12th)** i.e. customary contributions (minor taxes) to the King's treasury.
 - Treasurer, called **Samgrahitri** and **Bhagdukha**, collected the taxes and Vaishya were only taxpayers.
 - **Shataman Krishnala** are believed to be coins used but have no archaeological backing; there is reference to money lending (Shatapatha Brahmana describes a usurer as **kusidin**).

- **Arts and crafts:** smelting, carpentry, weaving, leather-working, jewelry- making, dyeing and pottery-making, glass hoards and bangles.
- Commerce and trade are indicated by **mention of sea voyages**.
- **Pottery type:** Painted Grey Ware (PGW).
- **Religious Aspect:**
 - Religion of early Vedic Aryans was primarily worship of **nature** (natural forces such as earth, fire, wind, rain and thunder) and **Yajanas**.
 - **Varun and Indra**, the most important gods of Rig Vedic age, **lost prominence** in later Vedic phases.
 - **Prajapathi** (the creator), **Vishnu** (the protector) and **Rudra** (the destroyer) became prominent during the Later Vedic period.
 - **Rituals, sacrifices and the requirement of a supervising priest (Purohita)** made religious life complex. The importance of prayers declined and that of sacrifices increased.
 - **Priesthood became a profession** and a hereditary one.
 - There were **no temples, no idol worship**.
 - **Magic and Omen** entered the socio-religious life.
 - At the end of the later Vedic phase **Upanishadik philosophers made efforts to simplify the religious practices**.
 - Few Kshatriyas, in Later Vedic phase, like **Janak** and **Vishswamitra** succeeded in knowing the supreme i.e. 'Brahma'.
 - **Dharma** meant one's duties to oneself and to others. **Rita** was the fundamental law that governed the working of Shrishti (Universe).
 - Towards the end of this period there was a **strong reaction against priestly domination and against sacrifices and rituals**. The rise of Buddhism and Jainism was the direct result of these elaborate sacrifices.

3.4 VEDIC DEITIES

Deity	Information
Indra	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● God of Lightning ● Most Mentioned, 250 hymns, known as Purandhar or destroyer of forts ● Lost prominence in the Later Vedic Phase
Vayu	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● God of wind
Agni	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● God of Fire ● For purity and Yajna

Surya	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● God of Life Source ● Had Vishnu, Savitri (Gayatri), Mitra and Pushan (vegetation, cattle-wealth and marriage) as its attributes.
Rudra	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● God of Destruction ● Also worshiped for healing from diseases ● Merged with Shiva in the later Vedic phase
Aditi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Mother of Gods
Usha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Goddess of Dawn
Varun	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● God of Water and Morals ● Most Powerful, maintained cosmic order/laws ● Lost prominence in the Later Vedic Phase
Vishnu	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● An aspect of Surya ● Least Mentioned, mentioned in 3 hymns
Marut	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● God of Wind
Prithvi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Goddess of Fertility
Aranyani	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Goddess of Forest
Parjanya	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● God of Rain
Prajapati/ Adipurush	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Supreme God ● Most prominent during the Later Vedic period
Pushan	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● God of the Shudras ● Supposed to look after cattle

3.5 VEDIC TEXTS

Shruti	Smriti
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Shrutis are the texts 'that are heard' or product of Godly revelation to the great sages (rishis) while in meditation ('dhyaan'). ● The four Vedas and Samhitas are included in the shrutis. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 'Smritis' on the other hand are those that are recollected by normal humans. ● The detailed commentaries/ explanations on the Vedas (Brahmanas, Aranyakas and Upanishads), 6 Vedangas and 4 Upavedas make the smritis.

3.6 VEDIC LITERATURE

A. The four Vedas

S.No.	Veda	Upaveda	Brahmana	Upanishad	Aranyakas	Mantra	Priest
1.	Rig Veda	Ayurveda (Medicine)	Aitareya, Kaushitiki/Sankhyana	Aitareya, Kaushitiki	Aitareya, Kaushitiki	1028	Hotr/Hotar
		Comment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Oldest surviving text. • Mentions the concept of Origin of the Universe • Hymns are dedicated to several deities mostly to Indra. • Themes: Life, death, creation, sacrifice and 'soma' (godly pleasure) • Recently, the Rig Veda has been included by UNESCO in the list of literature signifying World Human Heritage. 				
2.	Sam Veda	Gandharva Veda (Music)	Panchvimsh/Tandya, Jaiminiya	Kena, Chandogya	Jaiminiya, Chandogya	1810	Udgatar
		Comment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Earliest book on music (Sama = Melody; ragas & raginis) • Poetic text, derived from Rig Veda. • Contains the famous Dhrupada raga, later sung by Tansen. 				
3.	Yajur Veda	Dhanurveda (Warfare)	Taittiriya, Shatapatha	Taittiriya, Katha, Brihadaranyaka	Taittiriya	2000	Adhvaryu
		Comment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sacrifices and rituals, composed both in prose and poetry. • Two related samhitas: Shukla and Krishna 				
4.	Atharva Veda	Sthapatyaveda/ Shilp Veda (Architecture)	Gopatha	Mandukya, Mundaka Prashan	-	6000	Priests (Brahmins) didn't recite it.
		Comment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Magic, charms, omen, agriculture, industry/craft, cattle rearing, cure for disease; composed by Non-Aryans. 				

B. Other Texts

Upanishads	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Philosophical texts dealing with topics like the soul, the absolute, the origin of the world and the mysteries of nature. • Upanishad indicates knowledge acquired by sitting close to the teacher. • A collection of over 200 Upanishads are known but out of these 108 are called muktikas. • Mundaka Upanishad (largest of all): contains the famous phrase Satyameva Jayate. • Maitrayani Upanishad: Doctrine of Trimurti.
Brahmanas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Brahmanas describe the rules for the performance of sacrificial ceremonies. • Most important Brahmana is the Satapatha Brahmana, which is attached to the Yajur Veda.
Vedanta	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vedanta literally signifies the end of the Vedas, as they reveal the final aim of the Vedas. • They condemn sacrifices and ceremonies and denote the last phase of the Vedic period. • Sankaracharya, Ramanujacharya and Swami Vivekananda promoted the Vedanta school.

Vedanga	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The word Vedanga means the limbs of the Vedas. For proper understanding of the Vedas, one needs to know Vedangas which are supplements to the Vedas. These are 6 in number: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Siksha: Pronunciation of the words; education. Nirukta: Origin of the words. Chhanda: Metrics used in Sanskrit verses. Jyotish: Understanding of astronomy. Vyakaran: Sanskrit grammar. Kalpa: Knowledge of rituals (Dharma sutras)
Aranyakas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Called forest books and they deal with mysticism, rites, rituals and sacrifices.
Ramayana	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Roughly composed between c. 400 BCE - 300CE. Author was Valmiki, known as Adi Kavya, the oldest epic of the world.
Mahabharata	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Roughly composed between c. 400 BCE - 400 CE Author was Ved Vyasa; the longest epic of the world; Bhagavad Gita is extracted from Bhishama Parvan of Mahabharata. Shanti Parvan is the largest Parvan (chapter) of Mahabharata.
Purana	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Puranas literally means old. Puranas mention four ages: Krita, Treta, Dvapara and Kali. Some Puranas such as the Brahma, Matsya, Harivamsha, Vishnu, Brahmanda, and Vayu provide useful information on historical dynasties (of Haryankas, Shishu Nagas, Nandas, Mauryas, Shungas — till the Guptas).
Dharmashastra	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sanskrit texts dealing specifically with Dharma (code of conduct) that conceptually signifies a righteous moral law. Jabala Upanishad: 4-fold ashram (stages) for 4 purusharthas (goals): it was not applicable to women or shudras: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Brahmacharya (Celibate Student) for knowledge i.e. Dharma. Grihastha (Householder) for wealth and progeny i.e. 'Artha' and 'Kama'. Vanaprastha (hermit in retreat) for spiritual wisdom. Sanyasa (Renunciation) for liberation i.e. Mukti/Moksha. Out of the four varnas, three varnas, i.e., Brahmanas, Kshatriyas, and Vaishyas were considered Dvija (twice born, as they had the right to the sacred thread ceremony considered akin to second birth).

Additional Information

The Six Theistic Philosophies (Darshan)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Samkhya: theoretical foundation; by Kapil Yoga: union of soul with God; by Patanjali Vaisheshika: discusses atomic theory; by Kanad Nyaya: philosophy of logic; by Gautam Mimansa: rituals; by Jaimini Vedanta: most important; by Badrayan
Atheistic Philosophies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Buddhist School of Siddhartha Gautama Jaina School of Mahavir Swami Charvak or Lokayat School was actually propounded by Brihaspati but was systematized by Charvak.

3.7 OFFICERS AND THEIR PROFILE IN VEDIC PERIOD

Officers	Profiles	Officers	Profiles
Vrajapati	The officer who presided over the meeting of the tribal assemblies	Jivagribha	Police official

Kshatri	Chamberlain	Senani	Supreme commander-in-chief
Sthapati	Chief Judge	Gramani	Head of the village
Bhagadugha	Revenue collector	Kulapati	Head of the family
Mahishi	Chief Queen	Spasas	Spies & Messengers
Suta	Charioteer	Madhyamasi	Dispute resolving
Takshan	Carpenter	Palagala	Messenger
Sanghrahriti	Treasurer	Govikartana	Keeper of forests & games
Akshavapa	Accountant	Purohita	Priest of highest order

3.8 KEY CONCEPTS

Key Concepts	Source
Gotra	Atharva Veda
Purusha Sukta Hymn (Four-fold division of society)	Rig Veda (Tenth Mandala)
First three ashramas (Brahmacharya, Grihasthya, Vanaprastha)	Chandogya Upanishad
Four ashrams (Brahmacharya, Grihasthya, Vanaprastha, Sanyasa)	Jabala Upanishad
Samsara (transmigration of soul)	Brihadaranyaka Upanishad
Sabha and Samiti as the two daughters of Prajapati	Atharva Veda
Doctrine of Trimurti	Maitrayani Upanishad
Mention of the Great Flood	Satpatha Brahmamana

Vedic Period Bihar

- Vedas are the oldest sources of written information related to Indian history. They were created by the Aryans who migrated from the Iranian plateau around 1500 BC to northwestern India. Some historians associate the decline of the Indus civilization with the arrival of the Aryans.
- In the early Vedic period or Rig Vedic period (1500-1000 BC) they expanded towards the east. In this sequence, they came and settled in the area of Ganga valley.
- It was during this period (800 BC) that the geographical area of present-day Bihar is mentioned for the first time in the Shatapatha Brahmin. According to this description, the new visitors who came to the banks of river Gandak took up residence in Videha (present-day Tirhut-Mithila). The Aryans probably established their settlements at this time in the southern plain of the Ganges.
- Due to the development of technology, they were helped in cutting forests and in agricultural work. These changed economic conditions contributed decisively to the urbanization and subsequent formation of states in the region.

Sources For Ancient Bihar

- **Shatapatha Brahmana** composed in the 8th century BCE, various Puranas of later period, Ramayana and Mahabharata, Buddhist texts like Anguttara Nikaya, Diggaha Nikaya and Vinaya Pitaka, Jain texts like Bhagavati Sutras, foreign travelers like Megasthenes, Fahiyen, Itsang and Yuwen Chuan Vritanta, Kautilya's Arthashastra and Gupta literary works
- Sources of information on the history of the Mithila region of northern Bihar
- Literature available in Sanskrit and Maithili language
- Vidyapati's creations Kirtilata and Kirtipataka
- Varna Ratnakar of Jyotirishwar
- Rajnei Ratnakar of Chandreshwar

PREVIOUS YEAR QUESTIONS

1. To whom is the ninth Mandala of Rigveda Samhita completely dedicated? [40th B.P.S.C. (Pre)1995]
 - (a) Indra and his elephant
 - (b) Urvashi and Swarg
 - (c) Gods associated with plants and herbs
 - (d) Soma and the deity named after this drink

2. In which book is Gayatri Mantra found?
[39th B.P.S.C. (Pre)1994]
- (a) Upanishads
 - (b) Bhagavad Gita
 - (c) Rigveda**
 - (d) Yajurveda
3. Which of the following Indian philosophy propounded the atomic theory?
[BPSC (Pre) 2020]
- (a) Yoga
 - (b) Justice
 - (c) Sankhya
 - (d) Vaisheshika**

4. Shatpath Brahmin is associated with-
- (a) Rigveda
 - (b) From Samveda
 - (c) Atharvaveda
 - (d) From Yajurveda**
 - (e) None of the above/More than one of the above
5. In which literary work, the discussion of the geographical area of Bihar is found for the first time?
- (a) Atharvaveda
 - (b) Samveda
 - (c) Vayupuran
 - (d) Shatapatha Brahmin**
 - (e) None of the above/More than one of the above



4.1 ORIGIN OF JAINISM

- The doctrine of Jaina is **older than the Buddhist doctrine and as old as Vedic religion**.
- **Rig Veda** mentions names of **Rishabha** and **Arishtanemi** Jain Tirthankara.
- **Vishnu Purana** and **Bhagavat Purana** describe Rishabha as an incarnation of Narayana.
- Jainism **does not have a single founder**. It is commonly mistaken that Mahavir was the founder of Jainism. However, he was the last **Tirthankara**.
- Jainism came into **prominence in 6th century B.C.**, when Lord Mahavira propagated the religion.
- The word **Jain** is derived from **Jina or Jaina** - means **the Conqueror**. A Jina is said to possess **Avadhi Jnana**, (Superhuman cognition or psychic power). All the Tirthankara were **Kshatriyas by birth**.
- The **symbol hand with a wheel on the palm symbolizes Ahimsa in Jainism**. There is a word **ahimsa** written in the middle of it.

Additional Information

- Jain community makes for **4.5 million or 0.36 percent** of the Indian population as per 2011 census, the **sixth community** to be designated this status as a **national minority**, after Muslims, Christians, Sikhs, Buddhists and Parsis. **Gujarat** and **Rajasthan** have the highest concentration of Jain population in India.

4.2 FACTORS BEHIND THE RISE OF JAINISM

- **Vedic religion** had become highly ritualistic.
- It was accessible to people of **all castes**.
- The early Jainas adopted **Prakrit language** of the common people to preach their doctrines and discarded Sanskrit language (which was mainly patronized by the Brahmanas)
- Jainism offered **lower people an honorable place** in the society.
- The **sacrificial ceremonies** were also found to be too expensive.
- It accorded **equal status to women**.
- The **teachings of Upanishads**, an alternative to the system of sacrifices, were highly philosophical in nature therefore not easily understood by all.

4.3 TEACHINGS OF MAHAVIRA

- Rejected authority of the Vedas & Vedic rituals.
- Did not believe in the existence of god.
- Believed in Karma & transmission of Soul.
- Emphasized the equality but did not condemn the Varna system.
- Advocated a life of austerity and non-violence.
- Women had an equal role to play and were not looked down upon.
- Man may be 'good' or 'bad' as per his actions and not birth.

Additional Information

There were **24 Tirthankara (teachers)**

1st Tirthankara	• Rishabhdev or Rishabhdev
22nd Tirthankara	• Arishtanemi
23rd Tirthankara	• Parshvanatha: born in Varanasi
24th Tirthankara	• Vardhaman Mahavira

4.4 VARDHAMAN MAHAVIRA (599 - 527 BC)

- **Birth:** Kundagrama near Vaishali. Belongs to **Gnatrika Clan**. Buddha and Mahavira were contemporaries.
- **Parents:** Siddhartha (Head of Jnatrika Clan) and Trisala (Sister of Lichchhavi chief Chetaka).
- **Wife & daughter:** Married to **Yashoda** and had a daughter **Anojja or Priyadarshana**.
- **Teachers:** Alarakama and Udraka Ramputra.
- **Kaivalya** (highest spiritual knowledge): attained at the age of 42 under Sal tree at Jrimbhikagrama, on the bank of River Rijupalika. Henceforth, they are called Mahavir (brave), Jina or Jitendriya (one who conquered his senses), Nigrantha (free from all bonds), Arhat (blessed one), Kevalin (perfect learned).
- **First sermon:** On the Vipula Peak at Rajgir to his 11 disciples – known as Gandharas/Gandharvas.
- **First disciple:** Indrabhuti Gautama (female)
- **Death:** at the age of 72 years in c. 527 BCE at Pavapuri near Patna.
- **Symbol:**
 - Mahavira's symbol was a **lion**.
 - Rishabhdev's symbol was a **bull**.
 - Parsvanatha's symbol was a **hooded serpent**.

4.5 PHILOSOPHY AND TEACHINGS OF JAINISM

Tenets of Jainism	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Belief in God: Jainism recognised the existence of god but placed them lower than Jina (Mahavira). ● It did not condemn the varna system but attempted to mitigate the evils of the varna order and the ritualistic Vedic religion. ● According to Mahavira, a person is born in higher or lower varna as the consequence of the sins or the virtues in the previous birth. Thus, Jainism believes in transmigration of the soul and theory of Karma.
Anekantavada	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Emphasizes that the ultimate truth and reality is complex, and has multiple-aspects i.e. theory of plurality. ● It refers to the simultaneous acceptance of multiple, diverse, even contradictory viewpoints.
Syadvada	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● All judgments are conditional, holding good only in certain conditions, circumstances, or senses. ● Syadvada literally means the method of examining different probabilities. ● Seven modes of prediction (Saptabhengi Nayavada).
Five Doctrines of Jainism	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Parshvanatha's teachings (Chaturthi): <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ahimsa: Non-injury to a living being 2. Satya: Do not speak a lie 3. Asteya: Do not steal 4. Aparigraha: Do not acquire property ● Mahavira added One more teaching: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. Brahmacharya: Observe continence ● It mainly aims at the attainment of liberation, for which no ritual is required.
Three Jewels/ Triratna	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Right Faith: Samyak Darshan – belief in Tirthankara 2. Right Knowledge: Samyak jnana – knowledge of the Jain creed 3. Right Action: Samyak charitra – practice of 5 vows of Jainism
Two elements of the world	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Jiva: meaning conscious 2. Atma: meaning unconscious
Three Sources of Knowledge	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Pratyaksha: Direct Knowledge 2. Anuman: Contemplation 3. Sayings of Tirthankara
Five types of Knowledge	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Mati Jnana: perception through activity of sense organs 2. Shruta Jnana: knowledge revealed by scriptures 3. Avadhi Jnana: clairvoyant perception 4. Mana Paryaya Jnana: telepathic knowledge 5. Keval Jnana: temporal knowledge
Jain Metaphysics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Nirjana: Destruction of karma ● Moksha: complete deliverance from karma ● Jiva: living matter or soul ● Ajiva: non-living matter ● Paap: sin ● Punya: actions which leads to good karma ● Asrava: flow of karma ● Samvara: impediment of flow of karma ● Bandha: bondage of soul to karma

Anuvrata	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Anuvrata means the 'lesser vows' which Jain lay-people take, as a kind of parallel to the great vows of the ascetics. They are applied to the practice of daily life. The five great vows apply only to ascetics in Jainism, and in their place are five minor vows for householders. The five minor vows in Jainism are modeled after the great vows, but differ in degree and they are less demanding or restrictive than the same "great vows" for ascetics.
-----------------	---

4.6 SECTS/SCHOOLS OF JAINISM

- Jain order has been divided into two major sects: Digambara and Svetambara.** The division occurred mainly due to **famine in Magadha** which compelled a group led by **Bhadrabahu** to move South India.
- During the 12 years famine, the **group in South India stuck to the strict practices** while the **group in Magadha adopted a more lax attitude** and started wearing white clothes.
- After the end of famine, when the Southern group came back to Magadha, the changed practices led to the division of Jainism into two sects.

Digambara	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Monks of this sect believe in complete nudity. Male monks do not wear clothes while female monks wear unstitched plain white sarees. Follow all five vows: Satya, Ahimsa, Asteya, Aparigraha and Brahmacharya Believe women cannot achieve liberation. The earliest record of Digambara beliefs is contained in the Prakrit Suttapahuda of Kundakunda. Monasticism rules are more rigid under Digambara School. Bhadrabahu was an exponent of this sect. Major Sub-Sects: Mula Sangh, Bisapantha, Terapanth, Taranpantha or Samaiyapantha. Minor Sub-Sets: Gumanapantha, Totapantha.
Svetambara	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Monks wear white clothes. Follow only 4 vows (except brahmacharya): Satya, Ahimsa, Asteya, Aparigraha Believe women can achieve liberation. They believe tirthankaras can be men or women. Svetambara tradition of Jainism indicates five eternal substances in existence: Soul (Jiva), Matter (Pudgala), Space (Akasha), Motion (Dharma) and Rest (Adharma), unlike Digambaras which add the sixth eternal substance as time (Kala). Sthulabhadra was an exponent of this sect. Major Sub-Sects: Murtipujaka (Deravasi), Sthanakvasi, Terapanthi.
Other Sects	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Uchche Vad: Its promoter was Ajita Kesh Kambali. According to him, everything is destroyed after death. Akriyavad: According to this view promoted by Puran Kasayap, there is no fruit of good and bad deeds of human beings. Nityavad: Its promoter was Pakudha Kachaiyan. He told only seven elements, such as earth, water, fire, air, happiness, sorrow and soul (these elements do not interact with one another). Sandehvad: Its promoter was Sanjay Beluttaputra. He neither accepted any opinion nor denied any opinion. Sthanakvasi: It is a sect of Svetambara Jainism founded by a merchant named Lavaji in 1653 AD. It believes that idol worship is not essential in the path of soul purification and attainment of Nirvana/Moksha. Svetambaras who are not Sthanakavasins are mostly part of the Murtipujak sect.

Do you know?

Ajivikas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Ajivikas or 'Followers of the way of life,' were an ascetic order that started at the time of Buddha and Mahavira, and lasted until the 14th century. Makkhali Gosala left Mahavira to found the sect of the Ajivikas (pre-determinism or 'Niyati'). No human effort could have any effect against Niyati, and therefore karma is a fallacy.
-----------------	---

4.7 IMPORTANT TERMS RELATED TO JAINISM

Terms	Information
Asrav	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inflow of karmas to the soul that occurs at every second in life.
Shramana	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Seeker, one who performs acts of austerity and ascetic.
Samvara	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stopping the influx of the material karmas into the soul consciousness.
Nirjara	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Shedding or removal of accumulated karmas from the Atma (soul), essential for breaking free from samsara, the cycle of birth-death and rebirth, by achieving moksha, liberation. It is one of the seven fundamental principles, or Tattva in Jain philosophy.
Sallekhana	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is the religious practice of voluntarily fasting to death by gradually reducing the intake of food and liquids, also called Santhara.
Kaivalya	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Also known as Kevala Jnana, means omniscience in Jainism and is roughly translated as complete understanding or supreme wisdom.
Pratikraman Posadha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is a process during which Jains repent for their sins during their daily life, and remind themselves not to repeat them. Fasting by a Jaina member on full Moon and new Moon day.
Theravali	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The second section of the Jaina Kalpasutra contains a list of schools.
Ajnanavada	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Jaina doctrine of agnosticism. The Jain texts mention 67 kinds of Ajnanavada.
Mahavratas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Five principles observed by Jain monks.
Siddha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fully liberated
Jiva	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Soul
Gunasthana	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stage of purification
Basadis	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Jaina monastic establishment
Guna	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Quality

4.8 JAIN COUNCILS

Council	Venue	Chairperson	Outcome
First 300 BC	Patliputra	Sthulabahu, Patron-Chandragupta Maurya	Compilation of 12 Angas to replace 14 Purvas
Second 512 AD	Vallabhi	Devardhigani	Final compilation of 12 Angas & 12 Upanga

4.9 ROYAL PATRONS OF JAINISM

North India	Bimbisara, Ajatashatru, Chandragupta Maurya, Bindusara, Harshavardhana, Bindusara, Kharavela, Udayan, Pradyota.
South India	Kadamba dynasty, Ganga dynasty, Amoghavarsha (Rashtrakuta dynasty), Kumarapala (Chalukya dynasty)

4.10 IMPORTANT JAIN LITERATURE

- Traditionally, the original doctrine of Jainism was contained in scriptures called **Purva**. There were fourteen Purva. Jain literature is mainly written in **Prakrit language**.
- These Agamas are further divided into:** Angas, Mulasutra, Upangas, Prakirnaka Sutra, Chedasutra & Ulikasutras.
- Kalpasutra:** written by **Bhadrabahu**. It contains biographies of Jain Tirthankaras.

- **Agam or Canonical Literature (Agam Sutras):** Agam ('what has come down to us' or tradition) literature consists of many texts, which are the sacred books of the Jain religion. They are written in the **Ardha-magadhi**, a form of Prakrit language. The canonical Jain literature is claimed to have started from Adinatha (Rishabh Nath) (first Tirthankara).
- **Non Agam Literature:** Consists of commentary and explanation of Agam literature, and independent works, compiled by ascetics and scholars. They are written partly in Prakrit dialects (such as Maharashtri) and partly in Sanskrit.

4.11 EIGHT AUSPICIOUS SYMBOLS UNDER JAINISM

1.	Swastika	It signifies peace and well-being of the humans.
2.	Nandyavartya	It is a large swastika with nine end points.
3.	Bhadrasana	A throne which is said to be sanctified by the Jain's feet.
4.	Shrivasta	A mark which manifested on the Jain's chest and signified his pure soul.
5.	Darpana	The mirror which reflects the inner self.
6.	Minayugala	A couple of fish which signifies the conquest over sexual urges.
7.	Vardhamanaka	A shallow dish used as a lamp which shows the increase in wealth, due and merit.
8.	Kalasha	A pot filled with pure water signifying water.

Comparison between Jainism and Buddhism

- Jainism **recognised** the **existence of god** while **Buddhism did not**.
- Jainism does **not condemn** the varna system while Buddhism does.
- Jainism believed in the **transmigration of soul i.e. reincarnation** while **Buddhism does not**.
- Buddhism prescribes a **middle path** while Jainism advocates its followers to live the life of **complete austerity**.

4.12 JAIN ARCHITECTURE

- **Manastambha:** It is found in the front side of the temple, having religious importance with an ornamental pillar structure carrying the image of Tirthankara on top and on all four cardinal directions.
- **Basadis:** Jain monastic establishment or temples in Karnataka.

Layana/Gumphas (Caves)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ellora Caves (Cave No. 30-35)- Maharashtra ● Mangi Tungi Cave- Maharashtra ● Gajpantha Cave- Maharashtra ● Udayagiri-Khandagiri Caves- Odisha ● Hathi-gumpha Cave- Odisha ● Sittanavasal Cave- Tamil Nadu
Statues	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Gomateshwara/Bahubali Statue- Shravanabelagola, Karnataka ● Statue of Ahimsa (Rishabh Nath)- Mangi-Tungi hills, Maharashtra
Jainalaya (Temple)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Dilwara Temple- Mount Abu, Rajasthan ● Girnar and Palitana Temple- Gujarat ● Muktagiri Temple- Maharashtra

4.13 SPREAD OF JAINISM

- Through **Sangha**, it consists of **women & men**.
- Under the patronage of Chandragupta Maurya, Kharavela of Kalinga and the royal dynasties of south India such as the Ganges, the Kadambas, the Chalukyas and the Rashtrakutas.
- When **Bhadrabahu** (Guru of Chandragupta Maurya) left for South India, **Sthulabahu** remained in the North with his followers.
- **Chandragupta Maurya** became a Jain ascetic and spent his last years in Karnataka.

4.14 CONTRIBUTION OF JAINISM

- Preached **Non-violence** toward all living beings.
- Growth of **Prakrit & kannada** language.
- Vardhaman Mahavir preached in '**Ardha-Magadhi**' language, the language of the common man.
- Introduced new philosophy – **Syatvad**.
- Art & architecture - statue of Gomateshwara (Shramanbdlogola), temples of Khajuraho and Abu. Tiger cave of **Udayagiri** and **Indra Sabha** of Ellora.
- Jainism contributed to the growth of the trading community.

4.15 TIRTHANKARAS AND THEIR SYMBOLS

Tirthankara	Symbol	Tirthankara	Symbol
Rishabhanatha	Bull	Vimalanatha	Hog
Ajitanatha	Elephant	Anantanatha	Hawk or Porcupine
Sambhavanatha	Horse	Dharmanatha	Thunderbolt
Abhinandananaatha	Ape (Monkey)	Santinatha	Antelope
Sumatinatha	Heron	Kunthunatha	Goat
Padmaprabhu	Red lotus	Aranatha	Fish
Suparsvanatha	Swastika	Mallinatha	Jar
Chandraprabha	Moon (Crescent)	Suvrata	Tortoise
Suvidhinatha	Dolphin	Neminatha	Blue lotus
Sitalanatha	Wishing Tree	Arishtanemi	Conch
Sreyamsanatha	Rhinoceros	Parshvanath	Hooded serpent
Vasupujya	Buffalo	Mahavira	Lion

Mahavira's Disciples

Agnipath Achalaputra Pradyot	Indrabhuti, Prabhas, Bimbisara	Vayu Bhuti, Metarya, Ajatshatru	Sudharman, Aleampit, Dadhivahan	Mandit Vyakta, Malliray Sastipal	Moriyaputra Chetak
------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	---------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	--	-----------------------

PREVIOUS YEAR QUESTIONS

- Where was Mahavir Swami born? [42 B.P.S.C. (Pre) 1997, B.P.S.C. (Pre)2005 and tB.P.S.C. (Pre)2011]
(a) in Kundgram (b) in Pataliputra
 (c) in Magadha (d) Vaishali
- In which of the following cities did Mahavir Jain die? [40th B.P.S.C. (Pre) 2001-02]
 (a) Rajgir (b) Sanchi
(c) Pawapuri (d) Samastipur
- The first disciple of Lord Mahavira was [47th B.P.S.C. (Pre)2005]
(a) Jamali (b) Yosud
 (c) Vipin (d) Prabhash
- Which of the following is said to be the earliest Jain text? [40th B.P.S.C. (Pre)1995]
 (a) Twelve limbs
 (b) Twelve appendages
(c) Fourteen east
 (d) Fourteen Sub-Priors
- The names of Rishabh and Arishtanemi Jain Tirthankaras are mentioned
 (a) in Samveda
 (b) In Atharvaveda
 (c) in Yajurveda
(d) in Rigveda



- During the later Vedic period, (around 5 circa B.C.) two important religions - **Buddhism and Jainism** - came up with new philosophies.

5.1 PHILOSOPHY OF BUDDHISM

- The religion is based upon the teachings, life experiences of its founder **Siddhartha Gautam**, born in circa 563 BCE.

- Buddha asked his followers to **avoid the two extremes** of indulgence in worldly pleasure and the practice of strict abstinence and asceticism.
- He ascribed instead the **Madhyam Marg** (Madhya Pratipada) or the middle path which was to be followed.
- Roots of Buddhism in the past:** Vedanta, Sankhya philosophy & Upanishad.

A. Reasons for the spread and Popularity of Buddhism



Fig. 5.1: Reasons for the Spread and popularity of Buddhism

- Liberal & democratic:** Unlike Brahmanism, it was far more liberal & democratic. It won the hearts of the lower classes as it attacked the varna system.
- Simple language:** The Pali language which Buddha used was the spoken language of the masses.
- Personality of the Buddha:** He was kind and ego-less. His calm composure, simple philosophy and his life of renunciation drew the masses to him.
- Royal patronage:** Kings like Prasenjit, Bimbisara, Ashoka, Kanishka patronized Buddhism and helped it spread throughout India and outside as well. Ashoka sent his children to Sri Lanka for the spread of Buddhism.
- Inexpensive:** Buddhism was inexpensive, without the expensive rituals that characterized the Vedic religion.

B. Causes of Origin of Buddhism

- Expensive & complicated **Vedic rituals**, Superstitious beliefs, mantras confused the people.
- The **teachings of the Upanishads** were highly philosophical, therefore not understood by all.
- The **rigid caste system** prevalent in India generated tensions in society.
- Desire of Vaishya** to improve their social position due to the increase in trade and economic prosperity.
- Unrest in society** due to supremacy of the Brahmins.
- Practice of killing cows** became a hindrance to the new Agricultural economy.

5.2 IMPORTANT CONCEPTS RELATED TO BUDDHISM

Gautama Buddha
(563 BC - 483 BC)

- He is also known as **Siddharta, Sakyamuni & Tathagata**
- Belonged to **Sakya Clan**
- Father: Suddhodana**
- Mother: Mahamaya (princess of the Kosala dynasty);** brought up by his maternal aunt, Prajapati Gautami. She gave him the name 'Gautama'.
- Wife: Yashodhara** and had a son, **Rahula**.
- Birth Place: Lumbini, Kapilavastu (in present Nepal)** capital of Sakya republic.
- Teachers: Alara kama and Udraka Ramputra**
- Enlightenment:** At age of 33 under **Peepal tree** at **Uruvella (Bodhgaya)** on banks of river **Niranjana (Falgu)**.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● First Sermon: Sarnath (Deer park) (Varanasi) to 5 disciples including Mahakasyapa (first disciple); known as Dharma Chakra Parivarthana (turning of the wheel of law) ● Mahaparinirvana: Under Sal tree at Kushinagar (in UP) at age of 80. ● Idea of renunciation: Sight of Sick man, Old man, Corpse and Ascetic. ● Contemporaries of Buddha: Mahavira Jaina, Kings Prasenjit, Bimbisara and Ajatasatru.
Doctrine of Buddhism	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Did not involve himself in debates of soul & Brahma but concentrated on worldly problems. ● Buddhism accepts transmigration and impermanence. ● Buddha did not believe in God or soul. ● Stressed on karma and ahimsa. ● Against the varna system. ● World is full of sorrows & people suffer on account of desires. If desires are conquered, Nirvana will be attained & there will be freedom from the cycle of birth & death
Literary Sources	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ceylonese Chronicles: Mahavamsa by Mahanama, Dipavamsa and Attakatha by Wattagamani. ● Tibetan Chronicles: Divyavadana-Kalachakra ● Tripitaka/ Three baskets of Buddhist scripture: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Sutta Pitaka: Sutra related to Buddha and companion 2. Vinaypitaka: monastic rules 3. Abhidhampitaka: Doctrine and philosophy of Buddhism ● Jataka Folklore: stories related to the birth of Buddha/in Chinese they are called Sadok. ● Milindapanha: Questions of Milinda i.e Greek king Meander and answers of Buddhist monk Nagasena.
3 Jewels of Buddhism (Triratna)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Buddha: Founder/Teacher 2. Dhamma: Teachings 3. Sangha: Order of Buddhist monks/nuns
Three Pitakas	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Vinaya Pitaka: consists of rules of conduct and discipline applicable to the monastic life of the monks and nuns. 2. Sutta Pitaka: consists of the main teaching or Dhamma of Buddha. It is divided into five Nikayas or collections: Digha Nikaya, Majjhima Nikaya, Samyutta Nikaya, Anguttara Nikaya, Khuddaka Nikaya. 3. Abhidhamma Pitaka: philosophical analysis and systematization of the teaching and the scholarly activity of the monks. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Other important Buddhist texts include Divyavadana, Dipavamsa, Mahavamsa, Milind Panha etc.
4 Noble Truths: 'Chatwari Arya Satyani'	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Truth of Suffering (Dukkha): Buddha taught that everything is suffering (Sabbam Dukkham). It refers not only to the actual pain and sorrow experienced by an individual, but also to the potential to experience these things. 2. Truth of the cause of Suffering (Samudaya): Suffering is part of living. Desire (Trishna) is the main cause of suffering. 3. Truth of the End of Suffering (Nirodha): This suffering can be ended by attaining Nirvana/Nibbana. 4. Truth of the Path Leading to the End of Suffering (Astangika-Marga): There is a path that leads to the end of suffering.

5 Buddha's Teachings (Panchshila)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Buddha also established code of conduct both for the monastic order and the laymen to follow which are also known as the Five Precepts or Panchshila: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> No killing and respect for life. Abstention from theft. Abstention from sexual misconduct. Abstention from falsehood. Abstention from intoxication
The Five Aggregates (Pancha-khanda or Panch skandha)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Buddha believed that a human being is a collection of Five Aggregates and a proper understanding of these is an essential step towards the attainment of freedom from suffering. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Material Form (Rupa): It includes the five physical organs (ear, eye, tongue, nose & body) and the corresponding objects of the sense organs (sound, sight, taste, smell and tangible objects). Feeling or Sensation (Vedana): The aggregate of feelings arising out of contact with the objects of the senses is of three kinds-pleasant, unpleasant and indifferent. Perception (Sanna): This aggregate is the capacity to recognize & conceptualize things by associating them with other things. Mental formation (Santharas): This aggregate may be described as a conditioned response to the object of experience. Consciousness (Vinnana): The aggregate of consciousness is an indispensable element in the prediction of experience. It is essential to understand that consciousness depends on the other
Eight-Fold Paths (Astangika Marga)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The path consists of various interconnected activities related to knowledge, conduct, and meditative practices. Eight-Fold Path is more about unlearning rather than learning: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Right understanding (Samma-Ditthi): Understanding that the Four Noble Truths are noble and true. Right thought (Samma-Sankappa): Determining and resolving to practice Buddhist faith. Right speech (Samma-Vaca): Avoiding slander, gossip, lying, and all forms of untrue and abusive speech. Right conduct (Samma-Kammanta): Adhering to the idea of nonviolence (ahimsa), as well as refraining from any form of stealing or sexual impropriety. Right means of making a living (Samma-Ajiva): Not slaughtering animals or working at jobs that force you to violate others. Right mental attitude or effort (Samma-Vayama): Avoiding negative thoughts and emotions, such as anger and jealousy. Right mindfulness (Samma-Sati): Having a clear sense of one's mental state and bodily health and feelings. Right concentration (Samma-Samadhi): It signifies 'Samadhi' in the sense of enlightenment or Buddhahood.

5.3 GREAT EVENTS IN BUDDHA'S LIFE AND SYMBOLS

Great Events in Buddha's Life	Symbols
Avakranti (conception or descent)	White Elephant
Janma (birth)	Lotus and Bull
Mahabhinishkramana (Great Renunciation)	Horse
Nirvana/Sambodhi (enlightenment)	Bodhi tree
Dharmachakra Parivarthana (first Sermon)	Wheel
Mahaparinirvana (Death)	Stupa

5.4 BUDDHIST SANGHA AND ITS FEATURES

- The oldest prayer place in history where slaves, Insolvents, and diseased were not allowed.
- There were 64 types of crimes called **Pathimokshas**, which were prohibited.
- Women were also allowed to join.

A. Important Buddhist Scholars

- **Moggaliputta Tissa**: launched Ashoka's dhamma campaign.
- **Asvagosha**: wrote **Buddhacharita** and Sanskrit drama **Sariputra Prakarana** (Sariputra - the disciple of Buddha)
- **Nagarjuna**: Founded **Madhyamaka school** of Mahayana Buddhism, gave theory of **Sunyavada-Emptiness** and important work including **Mulamadhyamakakarika**.
- **Buddhaghosa**: most important commentator of Theravada, important work is **Visuddimagga**.
- **Dharmakirti**: Teacher at Nalanda, called as **Kant of India**.
- **Asanga and Vasubandhu**: Two brothers who flourished in the Punjab region in the fourth century CE.
 - **Asanga** was the most important teacher of Yogachara or Vijnanavada school founded by his guru, **Maitreyanatha**.
 - **Vasubandhu's** greatest work, **Abhidharmakosa**, is still considered an important encyclopedia of Buddhism.
- **Dinnaga**: The last mighty intellectual of the fifth century, also well known as the founder of system of the Buddhist logic

B. Bodhisattvas

- In Mahayana, Buddhism Bodhisattva is a person who can reach nirvana but delays doing so through compassion for suffering beings.
- It is similar to the concept of incarnations in **Hindu Mythology**.
- **Bodhisattvas** are common figures in Buddhist literature and art.

Bodhisattva	Traits
Maitreya	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Future Buddha & earliest bodhisattva • Also known as Ajita-Bodhisattva • Holds a waterfall in his left hand. • Popular laughing Buddha is claimed to be an incarnation of Maitreya.
Samantabhadra	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Universal Bodhisattva • Associated with Meditation • Manifestation is action.
Vajrapani	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Like Indra, holds thunderbolt (depict power) • Depicted as one of the 3 protective deities around Buddha. • Others two: Manjusri and Avlokiteshwara
Avalokitesvara	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Kind-hearted. • Manifests Buddha's compassion.
Kshitigarbha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Guardian of purgatories and children • Bodhisattva of hell-beings or earth immortal beings
Amitabha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Buddha of Heaven
Sadaparibhuta	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Manifests never disparaging spirit.
Manjushri	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stimulator of understanding and he holds book describing 10 paramitas • Depict male Bodhisattva wielding flaming sword in his left hand
Akasagarbha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He is boundless as space • Manifestation of wisdom

5.5 BUDDHIST COUNCILS

Council	Venue	Chairman	Patron
First- 483 BC	Sattapani cave at Rajgriha.	Mahakasyapa	Ajatasatru (Harayanka)
	Outcome <ul style="list-style-type: none"> It was held soon after the Mahaparinirvan of the Buddha. The council was held with the purpose of preserving Buddha's teachings (Sutta) and rules for disciples. During this council, the teachings of Buddha were divided into three Pitakas. Compilation of Sutta pitaka and Vinaya Pitaka by Upali. 		
Second- 383 BC	Vaishali	Sabakami	Kalashoka (Shishunga)
	Outcome : Division into Sthaviradins & Mahasanghikas		
Third- 250 BC	Pataliputra	Mogaliputta Tissa	Ashoka (Maurya)
	Outcome <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Compilation of Abhidhamma Pitaka. Decision to send missionary to various parts of the world 		
Fourth- 98 AD	Kashmir	Vasumitra & Vice-chairperson: Ashvaghosa	Kanishka (Kushana)
	Outcome <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Compilation of Mahavibhasha sastra. All deliberations were conducted in Sanskrit. Division of Buddhism into Hinayana (the Lesser Vehicle) and Mahayana (the Greater Vehicle). Abhidhamma texts were translated from Prakrit to Sanskrit. 		

5.6 SCHOOLS OF BUDDHISM

A. Major Schools: Mahayana & Hinayana

Mahayana Buddhism	Hinayana Buddhism
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The term Mahayana (Sanskrit word) which literally means Greater Vehicle. Sought salvation through grace & help of Buddha & Bodhisattvas. It originated in northern India and Kashmir and then spread east into Central Asia, East Asia and some areas of Southeast Asia: China, Mongolia, Korea, Tibet and Japan. Believed that Buddha will be born again. Worship Buddha in idol form. Language: Sanskrit Mahayana sects include: Pure Land, Zen, and Vajrayana (or Tantric) Buddhism. Sub-schools: Chittmatra & Madhyamaka Zen is a sub school of Mahayana which is prevalent in China, Korea and related to Taoism. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Considered a Lesser Vehicle. Also, known as Abandoned Vehicle or Defective vehicle. It believes in the original teaching of Buddha or Doctrine of elders. Orthodox, conservative schools of Buddhism. Followed the original teachings of Buddha. Sought individual salvation through self-discipline & meditation. Buddha will never be reborn. Did not believe in Idol worship. Language: Pali Buddha was an intellectual, not a god. Encompasses 18 sub schools. Most important: Sarvastivada, Theravadin & Sautantrika. Buddhism preached by Emperor Ashoka was Hinayana.

B. Other Schools: Theravada, Vajrayana & Zen

Theravada and Sarvastivada	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Theravada Buddhism is older and the more conservative of the two main divisions of Buddhism and is often referred to as the “Tradition of the Elder”. ● Theravada is a Hinayana sect. ● Theravada Buddhists strive to become Arhats and gain freedom from the cycle of samsara. ● Sarvastivadin considers everything empirical to be impermanent, they maintain that the dharma factors are eternally existing realities. ● Theravada Buddhism developed in Sri Lanka and subsequently spread to the rest of Southeast Asia. It is the dominant form of religion in Cambodia, Laos, Myanmar, Sri Lanka, and Thailand.
Vajrayana	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Vajrayana means The Vehicle of the Thunderbolt, also known as Tantric Buddhism. ● This Buddhist school developed in India around 900 CE. ● Believed in acquiring magical power for liberation. ● Developed in Tibet and believes in the worship of female deities - Taras. ● It became popular in Eastern India, particularly Bengal and Bihar.
Zen	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● It is a sub-school of Mahayana Buddhism that originated in China during the Tang dynasty as the Chan school of Chinese Buddhism and later developed into various schools. ● It spread to Japan in the 7th century C.E. ● Meditation is the most distinctive feature of this Buddhist tradition.

5.7 MISCELLANEOUS

A. Buddhist Universities With Their Location and Founder

University	Location	Founder
Nalanda	Bihar	Kumaragupta I (Gupta Ruler)
Odantapuri	Bihar	Gopala (Pala Ruler)
Vikramshila	Bihar	Dharampala (Pala Ruler)
Somapuri	North Bengal	Dharampala (Pala Ruler)
Jagadal	Bengal	Rampala (Pala Ruler)
Vallabhi	Gujarat	Bhattacharya (Maitrak Ruler)

B. Important Terms and Meanings Related to Buddhism

Term	Meaning
Arhats	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Liberated beings
Nirvana	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● State of Supreme Bliss
Sheel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Refers to when a layperson leaves home to live the life of a Buddhist renunciate among a community of bhikkhus
Sarma	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One who labors, toils, or exerts themselves (for some higher or religious purpose) or a seeker, who performs acts of austerity, ascetic.
Upasampada	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Refers to the rite and ritual of ascetic vetting (ordination) by which a candidate, if deemed acceptable, enters the community as Upasampada (ordained) and authorized to undertake ascetic life.
Vassa	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Three-month annual retreat observed by Theravada practitioners. It lasts for three lunar months, usually from July to October (wet months).

Uposatha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is a Buddhist day of observance. The Buddha taught that the Uposatha day is for the cleansing of the defiled mind, resulting in inner calm and joy.
Pavarana	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Assembly at the end of Vassa
Posadha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Restoration of vows
Mahabhinishkramana	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Great going forth – renunciation
Chaityas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prayer halls of monks
Viharas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Monasteries
Parajika	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Literally meaning defeat, it included four most serious offenses involving expulsion from the Sangha
Upasakas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Male followers who have taken refuge in the Buddha, Dhamma and Sangha, but who have not taken monastic vows.
Upasikas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Female followers who have taken refuge in the Buddha, Dhamma and Sangha, but who have not taken monastic vows.

5.8 CONTRIBUTION OF BUDDHISM

Socio- Religious Sphere	Art and Culture Sphere
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stressed on ethical living rather than rituals, animal sacrifices, etc. Does not recognize the existence of God/soul. Taught the Middle path for salvation. Propagated Liberal & democratic values. Women were given equal status as men. Opposed caste and Varna system, any form of hierarchy and discrimination. Authority of Vedas was challenged. Faith was given a rational basis. Concept of ahimsa was its chief contribution. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The stupas at Sanchi, Bharhut and Gaya, the chaityas and viharas. Promoted education through residential universities like those at Taxila, Nalanda and Vikramasila. The language of Pali and other local languages developed through the teachings of Buddhism. Promoted the spread of Indian culture to other parts of Asia.

5.9 CAUSES FOR THE DECLINE OF BUDDHISM

- Decline of Buddhist Sanghas due to **violation of Buddhist principles & discipline**.
- The Buddhists **began to adopt Sanskrit**, the language of the elite. So the masses moved away.
- The **attack of Huns in 5th & 6th centuries and Turkish invaders in the 12th century** destroyed the monasteries.
- Buddhism was **mainly an urban religion** with rural India always Hindu. When Islam came to India, it impacted the urban regions & thus Buddhism was impacted.
- Revival of Brahmanism** and division among Buddhists.
- Rajput rulers** were warlike and could not follow the policy of Ahimsa.
- Loss of Royal Patronage.
- Image worship** was started in Buddhism by the Mahayana Buddhists.

Additional Information	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> UNESCO's Heritage sites related to Buddhism Archaeological Site of Nalanda Mahavira at Nalanda, Bihar. Buddhist Monuments at Sanchi, MP. Mahabodhi Temple Complex at Bodh Gaya, Bihar Ajanta Caves, Aurangabad, Maharashtra 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Heritage City Development Scheme (HRIDAY) and identification of 3 Buddhist circuits are some of the few initiatives by the central government to harness the Buddhist pilgrims to both augment the Tourism and employment opportunities.

PREVIOUS YEAR QUESTIONS

1. Whose religious book is Tripitaka?
[63 B.P.S.C. (Pre)Exam. 2017]
(a) Jain
(b) Hindu
(c) Parsi
(d) Buddhist
(e) None of the above/More than one of the above
2. Who was the president of the first Buddhist Council?
[B.P.S.C. (Pre)2022]
(a) Vasumitra
(b) Mahakashyap
(c) Sanghraksh
(d) Lateral
(e) None of the above/More than one of the above
3. The first Buddhist council after the Mahaparinirvana of Lord Buddha was held in [B.P.S.C. (Pre)2018]
(a) Rajgriha (Rajgir)
(b) Gaya
(c) at Pataliputra
(d) Vaishali
(e) None of the above/More than one of the above
4. Who got enlightenment in Bodh Gaya?
[B.P.S.C. (Pre)2022]
(a) Mahavir Swami
(b) Gautam Buddha
(c) Simandhar Swami
(d) Parshvanath Swami
(e) None of the above/More than one of the above
5. At which place did Mahatma Buddha give his first 'Dharmachakrapravartan'?
(a) Lumbini
(b) In Sarnath
(c) At Pataliputra
(d) Vaishali



6

Pre-Mauryan Period: 600 - 300 BCE

6.1 AGE OF MAHAJANAPADAS

- The sixth century BCE is known as an era of **Second Urbanisation** in the Indian Subcontinent.
- The center of economic and political activity **shifted from the North-West, Punjab, Haryana, and Western UP, to Eastern UP and Bihar (Ganga Basin).**
- According to Buddhist texts, **Anguttara Nikaya** (land between Himalayas and Narmada) was divided into 16 independent states (Mahajanapadas).
- It was the phase during which **Janapadas** became greater in size and got involved in expansion of territory resulting in the formation of Mahajanapadas.
- **Sources of information:** Anguttara Nikaya (Buddhist texts) and Bhagwati Sutra (Jain texts)
- **Magadha** displayed the tendency and potential of becoming an empire.
- This period of Indian history was deeply influenced and driven by development of philosophical movements like **Jainism** and **Buddhism**.

6.2 THE SIXTEEN MAHAJANAPADAS

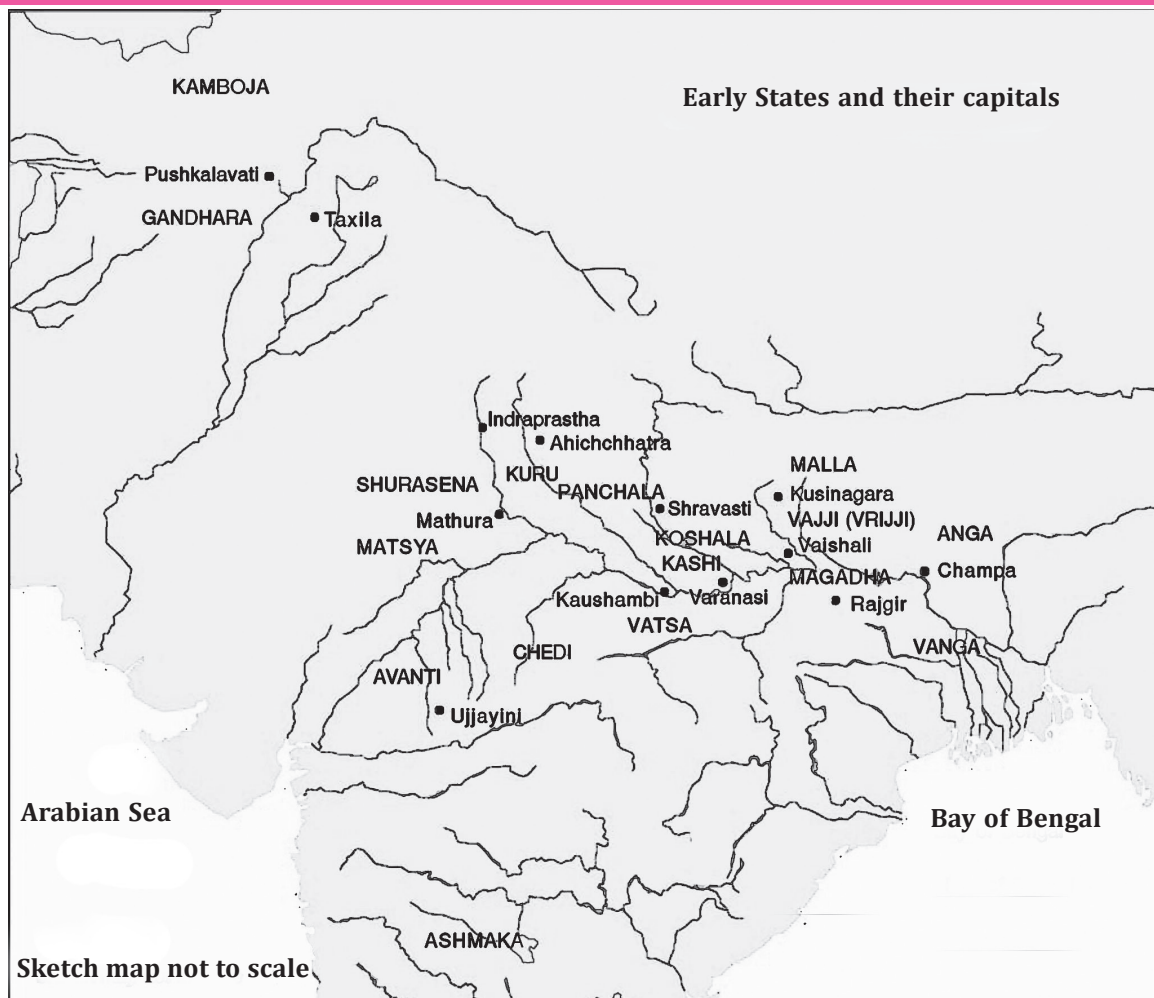


Fig. 6.1: The Sixteen Mahajanapadas

- Mahajanapadas were **either monarchical or republican**:
 (a) **Monarchies**: on the Gangetic plain – Magadha, Kosala, Vatsa, Aanti, Anga, Kashi, Gandhara, Shursena, Chedi and Matsya
 (b) **Republics**: on the foothills of the Himalayas and in north- western India – Malla, Vajji, Kamboja and Kuru.
- Economic growth led to development of urban centers and **first use of coins is also reported** from this period; they were called **punch-marked coins**.
- Large scale **use of iron tools, spread of agriculture** and **North Black Polished Pottery** is also associated with this age.
- During this period '**Brahmi**' script appeared for the first time.
- Taxation added to the wealth of the state, prostitution too appeared in the cities.

Mahajanapada	Capital	Information
Kamboja	Pooncha/Rajpura	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Situated in Afghanistan & Some parts of Jammu & Kashmir. • The kambojas were famous for their excellent horse breeds.
Ashmakas	Potali/Paithan	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Situated on the banks of the river Godavari near modern Paithan in Maharashtra. • It was the only Mahajanapada situated to the south of the Vindhya Range, and was in Dakshinapatha.
Vatsa	Kaushambi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Situated in Central Malwa and the adjoining areas of Madhya Pradesh. • The Vatsa capital is located 64 km from Allahabad at Kaushambi on the bank of the Yamuna. • Swapna Vasavadatta was written about king Udayana (ruler of Vatsa) love affairs by Bhasa.
Avanti	Ujjaini (North) / Mahishmati (South)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Avanti's king Pradyota is famous in legends, and had relations with Udayan, the ruler of Vatsa.
Shurasena	Mathura	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • It was marked by uneven roads, excessive dust, vicious talks and 'Yakshas'. Belonging to the Yadava clan which is also associated with Krishna.
Chedi	Suktimati	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Eastern parts of Bundelkhand and adjoining areas.
Malla	Kushinara/ Pava	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Non-monarchical, Kushinara is identified with Kasia in Gorakhpur district and Pava is possibly identical with Pawapuri in Patna district.
Kuru	Hastinapur/ Indraprastha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delhi-Meerut region. • Tribal polity. • Formed because of the alliance and merger between the Bharata and Pura tribes.
Panchala	Ahichhatra (W.Panchala), Kampily (S. Panchala)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Modern Kampil in Farrukhabad district. (U.P.) • Tribal polity.
Matsya	Virat Nagari	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Associated with modern Jaipur- Bharatpur-Alwar region of Rajasthan.
Vajji (Vriji)	Vaishali	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • From north of the Ganga and up to as far as the Nepal hills. • A confederation of eight clans (atthakula), of whom the Videhans, the Lichchhavis, the Jnatikas and the Vrijjis were the most important. • A flourishing non-monarchical state in the time of Mahavira and Gautama Buddha.
Gandhara	Taxila	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Extended up to the Kabul valley. • Gandhara king Pukkusati exchanged gifts with Bimbisara in Magadha and went on foot to see the Buddha. • According to the Greek historian Herodotus, Gandhara formed the twentieth province of the Achaemenid empire of Persia.

Anga	Champa	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Modern districts of Munger and Bhagalpur, Bihar. Noted for its wealth and commerce.
Kashi	Banaras	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Initially, the most powerful of them played an important part in the subversion of the Videhan monarchy. Leading center of textile manufacture in the time of the Buddha; the kashaya (orange brown) robes of the Buddhist monks are said to have been manufactured here.
Koshala	Shravasti	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ayodhya on the bank of Saryu, Saketa adjoining it and Shravasti (modern Sahet- Mahet) on the borders of the Gonda and Bahraich districts of Uttar Pradesh, were three important Koshalan cities.
Magadha	Rajagriha / Girivraja	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Modern Patna and Gaya districts of Bihar; bounded on the north and west by the rivers Ganga and Son respectively. Did not follow the varna system, hence Brahmanical texts make derogatory remarks for Magadha and Buddhist text hold it high in regard as being the place of Buddha's enlightenment (Gaya). Details of the king and people of Magadha are mentioned in the Anguttara Nikaya.

6.3 SOCIO-ECONOMIC SURVEY OF MAHAJANAPADA PERIOD

● Economy:

- Most urban settlements were inhabited by merchants and artisans (organized into a 'sartha' guild).
- Practice of trade and crafts was hereditary.
- Most important cities of the time were settled on the banks of the rivers and trade routes.
- Money economy: Trade was facilitated through use of money called 'Nishka' and 'Satamana' (mentioned in Vedic texts; no archaeological evidence)
- Mahajani System (banking system): Buddhism and Jainism recognized Mahajani or money lending.
- Agriculture was made easier with the use of iron tools. Paddy transplantation was practiced. Barley, cotton, pulses, millets and sugarcane were also produced.
- 1/6th of the farm produce was to be paid to the royal agent as tax and there were no intermediate landlords.
- Rich peasants were called 'Grihapatis'. Vessa meant Merchants Street.
- 'Balisadhakas' collected the compulsory taxes called 'bali' from peasants and Vaishyas only.
- Land route: A route led from Taxila to north Afghanistan and Iran and from there silver, gold, Lapis lazuli, jade (ornamental mineral) were obtained as raw materials.
- Sea route: The Pali texts of this period throw light on foreign trade. There is a mention of sea merchants in the Angutar Nikaya.

12. Two major trans-regional routes of the time:

- Uttarapatha:** of northern India, stretching from the north-west across the Indo-Gangetic plains to the port city of Tamralipti on the Bay of Bengal.
- Dakshinapatha:** of southern India, stretching from Patliputra in Magadha to Pratishthana on the Godavari, and connected to ports on the western coast.

● Society:

- The **Pali texts** (Vinay Pitaka) suggests three types of villages (grama):
 - Typical villages:** inhabited by various castes and communities – headed by gramabhojaka, gramini or gramakas.
 - Suburban villages:** which were in the nature of craft villages.
 - Border villages (anamika-grama):** which were situated on the periphery of the countryside
- Society was divided into four varnas:** Brahmans, Kshatriyas, Vaishyas and Shudras.
- Writing** had started and was used for book keepings in trade, taxation and the large size of the army.
- Lower varnas were subjected to many discriminations.
- The strengthening of **patriarchal control** within the household led to the increased subordination of women. **Position of women degraded** further except in Buddhist and Jain orders.
- Number of castes appeared** and the condition of untouchability further worsened.
- The age of marriage of women was reduced compared to the Vedic period.
- Severe punishments** were awarded by royal agents.

• Administration and Army:

1. **Jatakas** or stories of previous lives of Buddha mention that land grants were given in favor of great religious leaders.
2. The **King** was the **highest administrative official** who was supported by other officials called **Mahamantras** who performed functions of **Mantrin** (minister) and **Senanayaka** (Commander), **judge** and **chief accountant** etc.

3. Another class of officers performing similar functions were called **Aayuktas**.
4. Administration of the village was under a village headman called **Gramabhojaka**, **Gramini** or **Gramika**.
5. **Large, professional and permanent army**.
6. This period marks the **origin of the Indian legal and judicial systems**. The civil and criminal law was based on the varna division.

6.4 THE MAGADHA EMPIRE

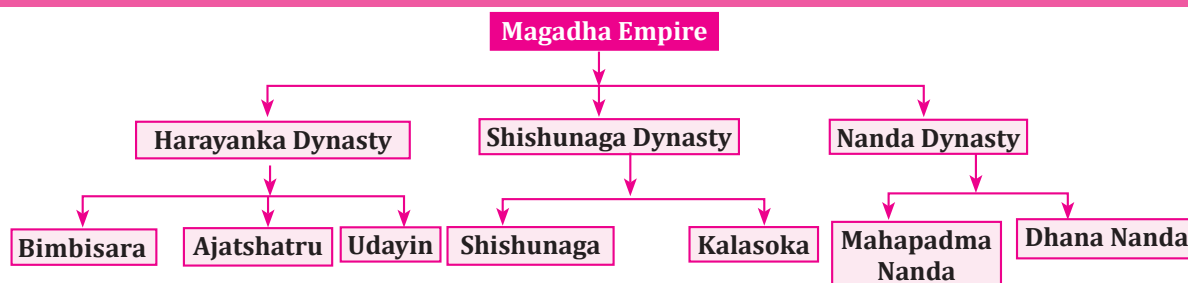


Fig. 6.2: The Magadha Empire

- The word '**Magadha**' was first mentioned in **Atharvaveda**.
- Kashi, Koshala, Magadha and the Vajji confederacy—remained significant in the sixth century BC.
- **Jarasandha**, who was a descendant of **Brihadratha** (eldest of the five sons of Vasu, the Kuru king of Chedi) founded the empire in Magadha.
- Magadha emerged victorious and became the **center of political activity** in north India.
- Magadha had a **strategic position** between the upper and lower part of the Gangetic valley.
- The iron ores in the hills near Rajgir and copper and iron deposits near Gaya were the **natural assets** of Magadha.
- **Capital of Magadha**: Rajgriha
- First King of Magadha was **Brihadratha** and he belonged to the **Brihadratha dynasty**.
- During the reign of **Bimbisara** and **Ajatasatru**, the prosperity of Magadha reached its zenith.

A. Major Dynasties

Haryanka Dynasty (544 BC - 413 BC)		
Bimbisara (542 - 493 BC)	Ajatashatru (492 BC - 460 BC)	Udayin (Udayabhadra) (460 BC - 444 BC)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The first important ruler of Magadha, Bimbisara, was a patron of Buddhism. • He was a contemporary of both Buddha and Mahavira, and paid equal respect to them. • Bimbisara's capital: Rajgriha or Girivraja. He is described as Seniya, i.e., the one 'with an army'. • Started the practice of using matrimonial alliances to strengthen his political position. • Dynastic marriages promoted goodwill between Bimbisara and contemporary rulers of Koshala and Viji. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ajatashatru killed his father - Bimbisara - and ascended the throne. • Adopted expansionist policy & defeated Koshala and Vaishali. • Ajatashatru was the contemporary of Buddha. Buddha died during his reign. • Most powerful and aggressive ruler. • He convened the First Buddhist Council at Rajgriha just after the death of Buddha in 483 BC. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • As per the Mahavamsa, the Sri Lankan Buddhist chronicle, Ajatashatru's son Udayin succeeded Ajatashatru and ruled for the next sixteen years. • Founded the new capital at Pataliputra (modern Patna), situated at the confluence of Ganga and Son rivers. • The last ruler of the Haryanka dynasty. • Succeeded by three kings: Aniruddha, Manda, Nagadasaka • They were later succeeded by the Sisunaga dynasty.

<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Policy of conquest and expansion.● First king to have a standing army.● Bimbisara sent his personal physician Jivaka to Ujjain to win the friendship of Pradyota, the king of Avanti.● Bimbisara’s aggression was towards Anga Mahajanapada, it was annexed to Magadha.● Effective and excellent administrative system.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Used two innovative military weapons: War engine (Mahashilakantaka); Chariot with mace (Rathamusala)● Began the fortification of Rajgriha	
Shishunaga Dynasty (412 BC - 344 BC)		
Shishunaga	Kalasoka	
<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Shishunaga was earlier a Viceroy/Amatya (high ranking official) at Varanasi (Banaras).● Temporarily shifted capital to Vaishali.● During the reign of Shishunaga, Magadha annexed Avanti (Ujjain) and many other Janapadas into the fold of the Magadha empire.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Also known as Kakarvarna (according to the Puranas).● Son and successor of Shishunaga.● Kalashoka shifted the capital back to Patliputra.● Convened the Second Buddhist Council held at Vaishali.	
Nanda Dynasty (First non-Kshatriya dynasty)(344 BC - 323 BC)		
Mahapadma Nanda	Dhana Nanda	
<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Mahapadma Nanda, who was from a shudra (non-Kshatriya) lineage, laid the foundation of the Nanda dynasty in Magadha. Also called Ugrasena in Pali texts, because of his large army.● He is called the first historical emperor of India.● Puranas refer to him as destroyer of all Kshatriyas i.e. Sarvaksatrantaka and Ekarat.● Presence of Jain ministers like Kalpaka, Sakatala, etc. in his court indicates his leaning towards Jainism.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">● Last important king of the Nanda dynasty.● He is referred to as Agrammes or Xandrames in Greek texts.● Credited with the invention of Nandopakramani (a particular measuring standard).● He was a contemporary of Alexander of Macedon. Alexander invaded North-Western India during his reign.● Finally, he was overthrown by Chandragupta Maurya along with Chanakya, which led to the foundations of the Mauryan Empire in Magadha.	

B. Causes of Magadha's Success

- Magadha enjoyed an **advantageous geographical position**. Magadha was located on the main land route between west and east India. Both **Rajagir** and **Pataliputra** were located on strategic positions (near to richest Iron ores).
- The area had **fertile soil** drained by **river Ganga**, which received enough rainfall.

- **Pataliputra** has a famous water fort (Jaladurga), encircled by rivers on three sides, the **Ganga, Son** and **Gandak** making the region impregnable to enemies and fourth river Ghaghra joins the Ganga nearby.
- Magadha had huge **copper** and **iron** deposits.
- Magadha could easily control trade because of its **strategic location**. It had a large population which followed different occupations such as **agriculture, mining, building cities** and served in the army.

- With the annexation of Anga by **Bimbisara**, river **Champa** was added to the Magadha Empire. Champa was important in trade with South-East Asia, Sri Lanka and South India.
- Magadha society had an **unorthodox character**. Society was not much dominated by the **Brahmanas**.
- It had a good mix of **Aryan** and **non-Aryan people**.
- Emergence of **Jainism** and **Buddhism** led to a revolution in terms of philosophy and thoughts. They both enhanced **liberal traditions**.
- Magadha had **strong standing armies** and **availability of iron** enabled them to develop **advanced weaponry**. Magadha was the first to **deploy elephants** on a large scale in wars.

6.5 FOREIGN INVASIONS

A. Iranian (Persian) Invasion in India

- Founder of the **Achaemenid empire** of Persia (Iran), **Cyrus II** invaded the region west of river Indus, during Bimbisara's reign in Magadha, and succeeded in establishing control over Gandhara, Kamboja, and Madra. His grandson **Darius I** conquered Punjab and Sindh.
- As a result, Indo-Iranian trade, influences of language, art and architecture increased.
- **Bell-shaped capital**, **Ashokan inscriptions** and introduction of **Kharosthi script** are the products of this influence.

B. Greek/Alexander's Invasion (327 BC – 325 BC)

- After defeating Darius III, the last Achaemenid emperor, **Alexander** crossed the Hindukush and entered north-western India which was an Achaemenid province in 327 BC.
- Ambhi (Omphis), the king of Takshashila, submitted to Alexander.
- **Battle of Hydaspes (Jhelum)**
 1. **Porus**, who ruled the territory between the Jhelum and the Ravi, was defeated and captured after initial resistance.
 2. Alexander, impressed by Porus' resistance, reinstated him to power.
 3. Alexander's army refused to cross river Beas (Hyphasis) to fight further and thus a clash between the tired Macedonian mercenaries and the huge army of the Nandas did not happen.
 4. After establishing a few Greek settlements in north-west India, Alexander died in **323 BC** in Babylon.

Impacts:

1. **Direct contact** between India and Greece (Europe).
2. Encouraged **political unification of north India** under the Mauryas.
3. Accounts by Alexander's historians provide information about that period.
4. Seeds of **Indo-Bactrian** and **Parthian States** in India.
5. Greek influences on the **Gandhara School of Art** and **Architecture**.
6. **New land & sea routes** were discovered by Alexander.

PREVIOUS YEAR QUESTIONS

1. Which was the first capital of ancient Mahajanapada Magadha? [BPSC (Pre) 2020]
 - (a) Patliputra
 - (b) Vaishali
 - (c) Champa
 - (d) organs
 - (e) None of the above/More than one of the above
2. The founder of Pataliputra was- [B.P.S.C. (Pre) 2008]
 - (a) Udayin
 - (c) Ashoka
 - (b) Bimbisara
 - (d) Mahapadmananda
3. By which ruler Pataliputra was first selected as the capital? [46th B.P.S.C. (Pre) 2003-04]
 - (a) Ajatashatru
 - (b) Kalashoka
 - (c) Udayin
 - (d) by Kanishka
4. By whom was the world's first republic established in Vaishali? [52 B.P.S.C. (Pre) 2008]
 - (a) Maurya
 - (b) Nanda
 - (c) secret
 - (d) Licchavi
5. What was the name of the dynasty of Ajatashatru? [B.P.S.C. (Pre) 2011]
 - (a) Maurya
 - (b) Haryanka
 - (c) Nanda
 - (d) Secret



7

Mauryan Age (321 - 185 BCE)

INTRODUCTION

- The Maurya period not only marks the establishment of the **first sub-continental empire**, but also the development of innovative and comparatively **stable governance strategies**.
- Maurya ruled over the whole of the sub-continent, except Kerala, Tamil Nadu, and some parts of north-eastern India.

7.1 SOURCES OF INFORMATION

A. Literary Sources

- **Megasthenes' Indica:**
 - Contains information about the **Mauryan administration**, particularly the administration of the capital city of Pataliputra and also the **military organization**
 - Throws light on **contemporary social life**.
- **Kautilya's Arthashastra:**
 - Written by **Kautilya**, a contemporary of Chandragupta Maurya, most important literary source for the history of the Maurya.
 - Kautilya was also called **Indian Machiavelli**.
 - The manuscript of Arthashastra was first discovered by **R. Shama Sastri** in **1904**.
- **Visakha Datta's Mudra Rakshasa:**
 - Drama in Sanskrit which describes how Chandragupta with the assistance of Kautilya overthrew the Nandas (written during the Gupta period).
 - It also gives a picture on the **socio-economic condition** under the Mauryas.
- **Buddhist Text:**
 - **Jatak Stories**, **Dipavamsa**, **Ashokavadana**, **Divyavadana**.
 - **Trinity** of Buddhist texts: **Mahavamsa**, **Milindapanho**, and **Mahabhashya**
- **Brahmanic Literature:**
 - **Puranas** reveal the lists of Mauryan kings and the chronology.
 - Hemachandra's **Parishishta Parvan**.
 - Dandin's **Dashakumaracharita**.
 - Banabhatta's **Kadambari**.

B. Archaeological Sources

- Punch marked coins, Northern Black Polished Ware (NBPW).

- Wooden palace of Chandragupta Maurya in Pataliputra.
- Ashokan inscriptions and Edicts.
- Junagarh Inscription of Rudradaman I.

7.2 THE MAURYAN DYNASTY

- The founder of the Mauryan dynasty, **Chandragupta Maurya** (324/321 – 297 BCE) inherited a large army of the **Nandas**, which he used to conquer almost the whole of north, the northwest, and a large part of the peninsular India.
- There is a lot of ambiguity about the origins and caste of the Maurya family, and they vary from text to text.
- **Buddhist texts:** Digha Nikaya, Mahavamsa, and Divyavadana, speak of the Mauryas as belonging to a Kshatriya Moriya clan associated with the Shakyas.
- **Brahmanical sources:** consider them Shudras and heretics.

A. Important Rulers

Chandragupta Maurya (322 – 298 BC)

- **Chandraupta or Sandroktos** (referred to in Greek literature) launched a series of wars against Dhana Nanda.
- Laid the foundation of Mauryan empire in 322 BC with help of Chanakya (Kautilya).
- Credit for the first unification of North India is attributed to Chandragupta Maurya.
- He was the **chief architect** of the Mauryan empire and built a vast empire, which included **Bihar, Nepal, western and north-western India**, and the **Deccan**.
- In 305 BC, Chandragupta **defeated Seleucas Nikator**, the Greek emperor after Alexander.
- **Megasthenes** (wrote the Indica), a Greek ambassador, was sent by Seleucus in the Chandragupta Maurya court.
- According to Jaina sources, Chandragupta **embraced Jainism** towards the end of his life and abdicated the throne in favor of his son.
- Accompanied by Bhadrabahu, a Jaina saint, he went to **Shravanabelagola (Karnataka)** (famous for statue of Gomateshwar), where he died by slow starvation (Salekhan).

Bindusara (298 – 273 BC)

- Chandragupta was succeeded by his son Bindusara, known to the Greeks as **Amitrochates**, while the Mahabhasya refer to him as **Amitraghat** (the destroyer of foes). **Madrasar**, **Simhasena** are other names used for Bindusara.
- Bindusara followed the **extreme fatalistic order** (religion) **Ajivika** founded by **Makhali Gosala**. This order had complete disregard for **karma**.
- Greek sources also mention his **diplomatic relations** with **western kings**.
- Believed to have **joined the Ajivika sect**.
- Tibetan Buddhist monk Taranatha describes Bindusara as **conqueror of the land between two seas** i.e., peninsular India.
- **Divyavadan**, Buddhist biographical narrative of Mauryan Kings, mentions a revolt at Taxila being suppressed by **Ashoka (son of Bindusara)**; who was **Kumara** or **viceroy** of Ujjain at that time.

Ashoka the Great (273 – 237 BC)

- Ashoka was crowned in **269 BC**. Radhagupta, helped Ashoka in usurping the throne.
- Regarded as one of the greatest kings of all times, and probably was the **first ruler to maintain direct contact with his people** through his inscriptions.
- He was appointed the **viceroy of Taxila and Ujjain** during the reign of Bindusara.
- **Other names of emperor: Buddhaskya and Ashoka** (in the Maski Edict), **Dharmasoka** (Sarnath inscription), **Devanampiya** (beloved of the gods), and **Piyadassi** (pleasing appearance, given in the Sri Lankan Buddhist chronicles Dipavamsa and Mahavamsa).
- His capital was at **Pataliputra (Patna)** and had provincial capitals at **Taxila** and **Ujjain**.
- **Childrens of Ashoka:** Mahendra/Mahinda and Sanghamitra/Sanghamitta
- 8 years after coronation, Ashoka fought the horrible **Kalinga War** in **261 BC**.
- Ashoka was moved by the untold miseries caused by the war, renouncing conquest by warfare, in favor of cultural conquest. In other words, **Bherighosha** was **replaced with Dhammaghosha**.
- Under Ashoka, almost entire subcontinent came under single control **except extreme south:** Uttarapatha (Taxila), Avantirashtra (Ujjain), Prachi (Pataliputra), Kalinga (Toshali) and Dakshinapatha (Suvarnagiri) were important provinces.
- **Ashoka was not an extreme pacifist.** He retained Kalinga and incorporated it into his kingdom; he also did not disband the army.
- Under Ashoka, the Mauryan Empire reached its **climax**.

A. Contributions of Ashoka

● Ashoka and Buddhism:

- He became a Buddhist under the guidance of **Mogaliputta Tissa**. Ashoka is known for his **Dhamma policy**.
- Ashoka convened the **Third Buddhist Council at Pataliputra** in 240 BCE, in order to strengthen the Sangha. It was presided over by **Moggaliputta Tissa**.
- According to tradition, and as mentioned in the Mahavamsa and Dipavamsa, he was converted to Buddhism by his nephew **Nigrodha**.
- He **visited Bodhgaya**, and organized missions. He appointed special officers called **Dharma Mahamatras** to speed up the progress of Dhamma.
- Buddhism for the first time went outside India during his reign. He sent his son **Mahendra** and daughter **Sanghamitra** to **Ceylon (Sri Lanka)**.

● Ashoka's Dhamma:

- The concept of **non-violence** and other similar ideas of Ashoka's Dhamma are identical with the teachings of Buddha.
- His policy of dhamma was a broad concept with elaboration of a way of life, signifying a **general code of conduct** and a **set of principles** to be adopted and practiced by the people at large.
- **4-cardinal points of Dhamma:** Tolerance, Non-violence, Good Conduct (Obeying parents and elders, respecting Brahmanas and Monks) & Welfare.
- A new officer called, **Dhamma mahamatra** was appointed for promotion of **Dhamma**.

● Ashoka Rock Edicts:

- **James Princep**, a British antiquary and colonial administrator was the first person to decipher Ashoka's edicts.
- The **national emblem of India** is taken from the Ashoka's **Sarnath Pillar**.
- **Name of Ashoka occurs only on minor rock edicts.** He was the first king to speak to people directly through inscriptions.
- **Rock and pillar edicts:**
 - ◆ Major and minor rock edicts (16 and 2 respectively)
 - ◆ Major and minor pillar edicts (17 and 3 respectively)
- **Features of pillars:**
 - ◆ Mostly, the pillars are **similar in form and dimensions**
 - ◆ Two types of stones are used:
 1. Spotted white sandstone (from Mathura)
 2. Buff coloured sandstone and quartzite (from Amaravati)

- ◆ **Mostly monoliths** (i.e., carved out of a single piece of stone) and have a lustrous, polished surface.
- ◆ Do not have a base, and the plain, smooth cylindrical **shaft tapers slightly upwards**.
- ◆ Have a **bell capital** (a stone carved in the shape of an inverted lotus).
- ◆ On top of the bell capital is a **platform (abacus)** which is intended to support the crowned animal.
- **Places of pillars:** **Kandahar** (Afghanistan), **Khyber Pakhtunkhwa** (Pakistan), **Delhi, Vaishali** and **Champaran** (Bihar), **Sarnath** and **Allahabad** (Uttar Pradesh), **Amaravati** (Andhra Pradesh), and **Sanchi** (Madhya Pradesh).
- **Eastern part of the empire:**
 - ◆ Magadhi language in Brahmi script is used. (Magadhi is the **dialect of Prakrit** found in Magadha).
- **Western parts of the empire:**
 - ◆ Prakrit in **kharosthi script** is used.
- Kandhar Inscriptions is **bilingual**, it uses Greek and Aramaic languages and scripts.
- **Major Rock Edict XIII** contains an extract in Greek and Aramaic as well.
- **Principles of Dhamma were clearly stated in Edicts. Summed up as follows:**
 - ◆ Service to father and mother, **practice of ahimsa**, love for truth, reverence to teachers and good treatment to relatives.
 - ◆ **Prohibition of animal sacrifices** and festive gatherings and avoiding expensive and meaningless ceremonies and rituals.
 - ◆ Efficient organization of administration in the direction of **social welfare** and maintenance of constant contact with people through the system of Dhamma Yatra.
 - ◆ **Humane treatment** to servants by masters and prisoners by government officials.
 - ◆ Consideration and **non-violence** towards animals and courtesy to relations and liberality to Brahmins.
 - ◆ **Tolerance** among all the religious sects.
 - ◆ **Conquest through Dhamma** instead of through war.

B. Major/Minor Rock Edicts

Major Rock Edicts			
Edict No.	Message	Edict No.	Message
I	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Prohibits animal slaughter. Only two peacocks and one deer were killed in Ashoka's kitchen. He wished to discontinue this practice of animal slaughter. 	II	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Medicinal herbs and humans and animals were given medical treatment. Also mentions about the Cholas, the Pandys, the Satyaputra and the Kerala Putras.
III	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Pradeshikas, Rajukas and Yuktas going on tours of inspection, preaching dhamma. 	IV	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Dhammaghosa replaced Bherighosha (war drum).
V	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ About Dhamma Mahamattas' appointment. 	VI	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Mantri Parishad and officers like Pulisani and Patedakas (reporters).
VII	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Religious tolerance in his own kingdom and in the neighboring kingdoms. 	VIII	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Dhamma Yatras (dharma tours) replaced Vihara- Yatras (Royal pleasure tours).
IX	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Emphasis on dhamma and moral conduct. 	X	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ No desire for fame and glory by the king.
XI	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Policy of dhamma is the best policy to follow and a best gift 	XII	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Appeals tolerance amongst all sects and people to honor the dhamma of others. Also mentions about mahamattas in charge of women's welfare (Ithijika Mahamatta).
XIII	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Ashoka's victory over Kalinga. Victory of Ashoka's Dhamma over Greek Kings, Antiochus, Ptolemy, Antigonus, Magas, Alexander and Cholas, Pandyas etc. This is the Largest Edict. It mentions Kamboj, Nabhaks, Bhoja, Andhra etc. 	XIV	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Describes engraving of inscriptions in different parts of the country.

Minor Rock Edicts

- Minor Rock Edicts are concentrated in the South and Central parts of the empire.
- They highlight the personal history of Ashoka and the summary of Dhamma.
- The edict found at **Kandahar** is **bilingual**, being inscribed in **Greek** and **Aramaic** and **Minor Rock Edict III (Bairat)** is addressed to the **Buddhist clergy**.
- The title most commonly adopted by Ashoka in his edicts is **Devanampiya Piyadassi** (beloved of the Gods).

7.3 SOCIO-ECONOMIC SURVEY OF MAURYAN PERIOD

• Mauryan Economy:

- **Sources of revenue:** the revenues came from land, ferry tax, forests, mines and pastures, license fee from craftsmen and fines collected in the law courts.
- The land revenue was normally fixed as **one-sixth** of the produce.
- Occurrences of famines are also reported in **Kautilya's Arthashastra** and **Jaina texts**.
- **Tolls** were also levied on commodities brought to town for sale.
- **Crown land** was called **Sita**.
- The Mauryan State had a **strict legal and penal system** (civil and criminal); tax evaders attracted the death penalty.
- **Punch-marked coins** (mostly silver) were used for transactions.
- **Hired laborers** were called **karmakaras**.
- State monopoly of mining, forest, salt, sale of liquor, manufacture of arms and metallurgy.

• Mauryan Society:

- Society was clearly divided into a four-fold **Varna system**, **slavery** (Dasa) existed in the society.
- There was improvement in the **social status** of Vaishyas and Shudras.
- There is **no mention of either Varna or Sati** in the Ashokan edicts.
- **Varna-Shankar Vivah** or **inter-varna** or **inter-caste marriages** too are reported; these were of two kinds, namely, **Anuloma** (groom of higher varna/caste) and **Pratiloma** (bride of higher varna/ caste).
- While Kautilya mentions **9 categories of slaves**, Megasthenes reports its absence.
- As per the Jataka tales untouchables like **Chanadala**, **Nishad**, **Shabar** etc. existed and were treated inhumanely.
- **Women's position in society deteriorated severely:** widow remarriage stopped, the institution of Ganikas (prostitution) expanded.

• Mauryan Administration:

- **The Mauryan Empire was divided into 5 provinces:** **Uttarapatha** (Capital: Taxila), **Avantipatha** (Ujjain), **Dakshinpatha** (Suvarnagiri), **Prachyapatha** and **Magadha**.
- **Huge army and Navy** were maintained in which all the **4 varnas** were allowed to serve.
- The ascendancy of the Mauryas had resulted in the **triumph of monarchy in India**.

• Central Administration:

- **Council of ministers (Mantriparishad):** consisted of Purohita, Mahamantri, Senapati and Yuvaraja to assist the king in administrative matters.
- Highest officers were called **'Tirthas'** and **'Adhyakshas'** (superintendents), they managed 26 departments.
- **Census:** Census was conducted regularly during the Mauryan period
- **Judicial and Police departments:** Kautilya mentions presence of both civil and criminal courts.
- **Important Officials:**
 - ◆ **Mantri** – Chief Minister
 - ◆ **Mantriparishad/Adhyaksha** – Head of Council of Minister
 - ◆ **Purohita** – Chief priest
 - ◆ **Senapati** - Commander-In-Chief
 - ◆ **Yuvaraj** - Crown Prince
 - ◆ **Samaharta** - Revenue Collector
 - ◆ **Shulkadhyaksha** - Officer-In-Charge of Royal Income
 - ◆ **Spies (gudhapurushas)** and **informers (prativedakas)** played an important role.

• Local Administration:

- The Mauryan state also had local and municipal administration; **Vish** or **Ahara** (districts) were the units of a province.
- Megasthenese's account mentions **6 committees of five members each** for administering the municipalities.

- **Important Officers:**

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Sitadhyaksha - Supervised agriculture ● Panyadhyaksha -Superintendent of Commerce ● Yukta - Subordinate Revenue Officer ● Pradeshika - Chief revenue officer. ● Sthanika - Head of local administration. worked under Preadesika 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Rajuka - Revenue settlement officer ● Samsthadhyaksha – Superintendent of market ● Pauthavadhyaksha – Superintendent of weight & measure. ● Nava Adhyaksha - Superintendent of ships. ● Sulkaadhyaksha - Collector of tolls ● Village Level Officers: ● Gramika: Head of the village. ● Gramvridhas: Panchayat consists of Village elders to settle disputes
---	--

- **Sudarshan lake** (Girnar Hill, Gujarat) was constructed during the reign of **Chandragupta Maurya**.
- **Tamralipti** (Tamlook in Midnapur, WB) in the east and **Bharuch/Broach** (Gujarat) in the west were two important ports.
- **Raja** (the king), **Mitra** (Friend), **Durg** (fort), **Amatya** (the secretaries), **Janapada** (territory), **Kosha** (the treasure), **Sena** (Army) were the 7 elements of states of **Kautilya's Saptanga theory**.

7.4 OFFICERS IN MAURYAN STATE

Officer	Position	Officer	Position
Prashasti	Prison Head	Annapala	Head of Food Grains Department
Sannidata	Treasury Head	Rajjukas	Land Measurer
Koshadhyaksha	Treasury Officer	Akaradhyaksha	Mining Officer
Koshagar Adhyaksha	Royal Treasury Manager;	Lauhadhyaksha	Metallurgy Officer
Nayaka	City Security Chief	Lakshanadhyaksha	Coin Minting
Vyabharika	Chief Judge	Lavanadhyaksha	Officer of Salt Department
Karmantika	Head of Industries & Factories	Ayudhadhyaksha	Weapon Manufacturing & Defence.
Swarnadhyaksha	Officer of Gold Department	Kunyadhyaksha	Officer of Forest
Dandapala	Head of Police	Manadhyaksha	Office of Time & Place Determination
Durgapala	Head of Royal Fort	Sunadhyaksha	Slaughter- House Officer
Mudradhyaksha	Royal Symbol, Coin	Dyutadhyaksha	Gambling Department
Naukadhyaksha	Shipping Officer	Pattan Adhyaksha	Officer of Port
Pautavadhyaksha	In Charge of Weights and Measures.		

7.5 DECLINE OF THE MAURYAN EMPIRE

- **Over-centralisation, cumbersome bureaucracy, super heavy taxation** (on almost every activity) and **foreign invasions** were main factors of decline.
- **Neglect of North:** West frontier and construction of great wall of China.
- **Financial Crisis:** Ashoka incurred huge expenditure for promotion of his 'Dhamma Mission'.
- **Over-tolerant, non-violent attitude** killed the fighting spirit of the army.
- After Ashoka's death in 232 BC Mauryan emperors were **incompetent** and **oppressive**.
- **Pushyamitra Shunga**, a Mauryan army commander, killed the last Mauryan emperor **Brihadrath** and founded the **Shunga Dynasty in 187 BC**.

PREVIOUS YEAR QUESTIONS

1. Megasthenes was the ambassador of
[B.P.S.C. (Pre)2017]
(a) **Seleucus** (b) Alexander
(c) Darius (d) Greeks
(e) None of the above/More than one of the above
2. Who identified Chandragupta Maurya with Sandrokotes?
[B.P.S.C. (Pre)2008]
(a) **William Jones** (b) V. Rimmi
(c) R. Of. Mukherjee (d) D.R. Bhandarkar

3. Who first read the Brahmi script?
[B.P.S.C. (Pre)2008]
(a) A. Cunningham
(b) A.H. donor
(c) Vyueler
(d) **James Prinsep**
4. What is the name of the book of Megasthenes?
[B.P.S.C. (Pre)2005]
(a) Economics
(b) Rigveda
(c) Puranas
(d) **Indica**



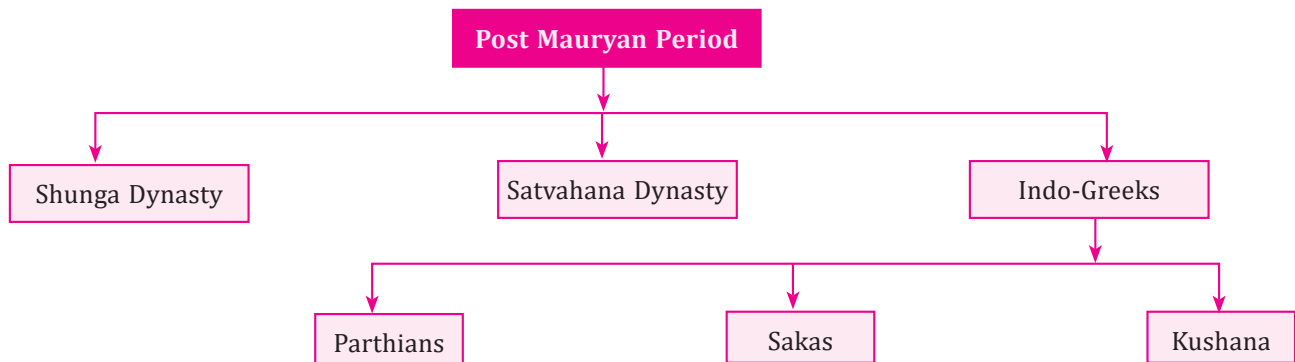


Fig. 8.1: Post Mauryan Period

- The Maurya rule thus came to an end and the **Sunga Dynasty** was established as the rulers of Magadha.
- The native dynasties like Shungas, Satvahana, and the Kanvas ruled in eastern India, central India and the Deccan region.
- Foreigners like Indo-Greeks or Bactrians, Sakas, Parthians and the Kushanas ruled in north-western India.
- This was a period defined by the **intermingling and influence of new cultures, vibrant doctrinal debates**, the rise in **devotional worship** of images and the **institutionalization of religious activity**.
- The period also saw the **emergence of sophisticated sculptural and architectural styles**.

8.1 SOURCE OF INFORMATION

- Puranas; Dharmashastra; Manusmriti also known as **Manav Dharma Shastra** is composed by **Sage Manu** and is the first detailed lawbook available.
- **Gargi Samhita** and the **Mahabhashya** of Patanjali (commentary on **Panini's Ashtadhyayi**).
- Buddhist Jatakas, **Divyavadana**, **Mahavastu** and the **Milindpanho** (Sanskrit, Milindaprashna).
- **Malavikagnimitram** of **Kalidasa** and the **Harshacharita** of **Banabhatta**.
- **Periplus of the Erythraean Sea** written by an anonymous Greek seafarer (pattern of trade between India and the Western world).

- Epigraphic records in **Kharosthi** found in large numbers in **Gandhara** and **Central Asia** refer to different facets of India's regular contacts with these regions.

8.2 SHUNGA DYNASTY (187 BC - 78 BC)

- **Founder: Pushyamitra Sunga**, who was the commander-in-chief under the Mauryas.
- Capital at **Pataliputra** and a second capital at **Vidisha** (under son Agnimitra's viceroy).

A. Pushyamitra Shunga

- He defended the country (the Gangetic valley) and its culture against foreign invasions (Greeks).
- Pushyamitra shunga erected **Bharhut stupa**.
- He followed **Brahmanism** and performed two **Ashvamedha sacrifices**.
- Also promoted the growth of **Vaishnavism** and the **Sanskrit language**.

B. Agnimitra

- **After Pushyamitra, his son Agnimitra ruled.**
- Kalidasa's play **Malvikagnimitra** is a love story of the **King Agnimitra and a handmaiden Malvika**.
- A significant attempt at penetrating into India by **Demetrius I of Bactria** was countered successfully by **Vasumitra, son of Agnimitra**.
- Performed Ashwamedh sacrifice for revival of Brahmanical order and patronized scholars like **Patanjali and Manu**

C. Vasumitra

- After Agnimitra, **Vasumitra** became the King and was succeeded by 7 more kings of the same dynasty.
- Shunga's empire covered regions of **Bihar, Bengal and Uttar Pradesh and northern Madhya Pradesh**.
- The last ruler of the Shunga dynasty was **Devabhuti**.

D. Importance of Shungas

- Shungas issued **gold and silver coins** and they inherited and continued with the Mauryan **structure of administration**.
- They patronized the Brahmanical order, yet there was **no antagonism towards Buddhism**.
- **Mathura school of art** achieved new heights, especially in realistic human depiction.
- Manu's **Manav Dharma Shashtra** or **Manusmriti** and **Kalidasa's Malavikagnimitram** are said to have been composed during this period.
- **Yavanarajya inscription, Dhanadeva-Ayodhya inscription** mentions Shungas.
- **Nanaghat inscription, Nasik Inscription, Hatigumpā inscription** of Kharavela, **Erragudi inscription** of Ashoka provide important information about Shungas.

8.3 SATAVAHANA DYNASTY

- Satavahana are referred as **Andhras** in the **Puranas**.
- **Simuka** was the **founder** of the Satavahana dynasty.

- The Satavahana kingdom is chiefly composed of **modern-day Andhra Pradesh, Telangana and Maharashtra**.
- At times, their rule also included parts of Karnataka, Gujarat and Madhya Pradesh.
- **Primary capital: Pratishthana** (modern Paithan in Maharashtra) on **Godavari river** & second Capital was **Amravati**.
- **Sources of Information: Aitareya Brahmana, Puranas, epics, Brihat Katha of Gunadya, Kamasutra of Vatsyayana**.
- The Satavahana graves are reported to be **encircled by big pieces of stone** and therefore they are known also as **megalithic people**.
- Next important king was **Gautamiputra Satkarni** (known as **Ekabrahmana**) whose achievements are recorded in the **Nasik inscription** of **Gautami Balashri** (his mother). He defeated **Sakas, Greeks, Parthians** and **Nahapana** (king of western Satrapa)
- Around 150 CE, **Rudradaman** took advantage of weak successors of Gautamiputra Satkarni and defeated them.
- At the end of 2nd CE, another important ruler **Yajnasut Alakrni** came to the throne who conquered back the areas of Gujrat, Malwa and Andhra.
- After Alakarni, Satavahana power declined and they were **replaced by Vakataka Dynasty** in the same regions, who too were **Brahmins**.

8.4 SIGNIFICANCE OF SATAVAHANA RULE

Political Setup and Administration	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Important officials: Amatyas, Mahamatya, Mahasenapati• King: upholder of Dharma• Feudal traits can be seen in their administration• Practise of tax-free land grants to Brahmins• Amatyas and Mahamatras were district officers during Satavahana rule which was called as Ahara.• Gaulmika administered the rural areas;• Katakas and Skandhvaras were the military camps.• Dharmshastras not only set ideals for the people but also for the King.
Art and Architecture	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Satvahanas promoted development of architecture in hills of the Western Ghats where caves were cut in Ajanta, Nasik, Kaule, Bhaja, Kondain, Kanheri.• These caves were cut in to make Chaityas (Buddhist cave-temple) and Viharas (Buddhist rest houses). Karle Chaitya is the largest cave temple.• Nagarjunkonda and Amravati were important centers of trade and art. Stupas were constructed here, use of white marble too is reported for the first time.• Contributed to the development of Ajanta school of painting which is known for beautiful color combinations, drawings, expression of emotions, and spirituality.• Buddha's entire life is pictured - Saptashati.• Gatha Saptasati: Excellent work in Prakrit by Hala

Economy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Did not issue gold coins but issued gold as bullion. They issue coins of lead, potins (silver-like alloy used in coins. It is typically a mixture of copper, tin and lead), copper etc. Trade with Roman empire Pratishthana & Tagara were important trade centers. They were the first native rulers to issue their own coins with the portraits of the rulers. Paddy transplantation, cotton production and exploitation of iron ores (Karimnagar and Warangal) was commonly practiced.
Society and Religion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Being matrilineal, most of the kings are named after their mother- Gautamiputra Satakarni, Vasisthiputra Pulumayi, Yagnasri Satakarni. With the flourishing of Mahayana Buddhism, worship of Krishna and Vasudeva was also common. They supported both Buddhism and Brahmanism although they were Hindus and claimed Brahmanical status.
Literature	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Most of the inscriptions of the Satavahana rulers are in Prakrit Language as it was their official language. Satavahana ruler Hala, himself a great scholar, composed Gathasaptasati.

8.5 INDO-GREEKS (200 BCE - 100 BCE)

- Indo-Greeks were the Greek people who got settled in India and became localized over a period of time.
- Indo-Greek rule in India had 3 branches**, namely, **Bactria i.e., North Afghanistan, Taxila (Takshashila)** and **Sakal or Sialkot** which is now in Pakistan.
- An ambassador from the **Taxila branch, Heliodorus** was sent to the court of the King of Vidisha. Heliodorus got a **stone pillar** constructed in **Greek style** (different from Ashokan style) which was dedicated to **Lord Vasudeva**.
- Demetrius and Menander or Milind** are two significant rulers mentioned from the **Sakal or Sialkot** branch of Indo-Greek. Menander or Milind (165 BC - 145 BC) **adopted Buddhism under Nagasen** who wrote **Milindpanho** in **Sanskrit**. This book is a great source of history of this age.
- Indo-Greeks were the first to **issue gold coins** bearing inscriptions of **images of Kings and Gods**. India learned the use of the curtain (yavan) from Greeks. The Greek term horoscope was derived from the term **Horasastra**. They introduced the practice of **governorship**.
- Growth of **metallurgy, medicine, astronomy, stone-cutting, perfume-making** are evidence of technical advancements under Indo-Greeks.
- Patronizing both Buddhism and Hinduism**, the greatest contribution of Indo-Greeks is witnessed in the development of **Gandhara School of Art**.
- Gandhara School of Art:**
 - In this, Greek techniques are applied over Buddhist themes and it is also known as **Greeko-Buddhist Art**.
 - Taxila, Peshawar, Bactria, Bamiyan, Hadda**; in Afghanistan; **Baigram** (Kashmir) were important sites of development of this school of art.
 - Muscular body, beard and mustache** are seen in the images of **Buddha and Bodhisattvas**. Images of Greek gods and Kings too are reported.
 - Use of **gray sandstone**, outer robe (Roman influence), facial images and anthropomorphic (human form) God (Greek influence) is evident in the Gandhara School of Art.
- Significance of the Indo-Greeks:**
 - 1st rulers to **issue coins** as well as **gold coins**.
 - They **inscribed date & human figures** on the coins.
 - Many coins have been found with **images of Indian deities** also.
 - Also **introduced drama/play** with use of curtains.
 - Patronized Buddhism**, most of the Indo-Greek kings were Buddhists.
 - Greek influence is mostly seen in art and sculpture, particularly the Gandhara School of Art.

● **Important Dynasties:**

Parthians	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> At the end of 100 BC few kings with Iranian names like Pahlavas of Indo-Parthians, captured north-western India. In the reign of Gondophernes (the most significant of the Indo-Parthians) St. Thomas is said to have come to India for the propagation of Christianity.
Sakas/ Scythians	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sakas who were also known as Scythians, were from Western China. The first Shaka king was Maues or Moga (approx 80 BC) who is known from inscriptions and a series of coins. Mathura, Ujjain and Girnar were centers of Saka rule in north India. They ruled in the capacity of Satrapas (i.e., governors) and Mahasatrapas. With control over western Ganga valley, parts of central India and Gujarat, Sakas were almost always at war with Satavahana and put pressure over the Deccan region. Rudradaman (130 CE - 150 CE) of Ujjain center of Sakas is of significance as he finds mention in Junagarh inscription. (a) This inscription is in Sanskrit unlike previous Prakrit inscriptions. (b) Rudradaman got the lake Sudarshan repaired for better irrigation (constructed during the time of Chandragupta Maurya). Huge numbers and a great variety of silver coins are reported from western India that are attributed to the Sakas. Patronizing Indian art and culture many of the Saka rulers got themselves Indianized. Important centers of development of art were Sanchi, Mathura and Gandhara. The King of Ujjain defeated Sakas and assumed the title of Vikramaditya and established the Vikram Samvat or era in 58 CE.
Kushans	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Kushanas (or Yueh-Chis) too were from China, they ruled in North-West India with Purushpur (Peshawar) as their capital. Kanishka, a Mahayan Buddhist, was the most important Kushana ruler. Wem Kadphises, Huviska and Vasiska were other important Kushana rulers in India. The 4th Buddhist council at Kundalvan Vihar (Kashmir) with Vasumitra as president was held during Kanishka's reign. Ashwaghosh was vice-president of the Mahayana Buddhist council. Adopted the title of 'Devputra', and has been shown wearing a 'peaked helmet' on some coins. Buddha Charita (biography of Buddha), was composed by Ashwaghosh of Patliputra. Nagarjuna was a great scholar of his court, who propounded the Madhyamika Philosophy of Mahayana Buddhism. Nagarjuna also discussed the idea of relativity and hence was called as Einstein of India. In 78 CE, the Saka era was founded by Kanishka. They issued gold standard coins (22 or 23 carats). Ruling over the regions of the Silk route, Kushanas greatly benefitted from it. Greater use of saddles in horse riding, armor, turbans, trousers, helmets, long coats and better cavalry are Kushina's contributions. Scholars in his court: Parsva, Ashvaghosha, Vasumitra, Nagarjuna, Charaka and Mathara. Introduced Satrap system: The Empire was divided into Satrapies under the Satrap. It was during this time that Buddhism began to spread to Korea and Japan also. Three distinct schools of art flourished: Gandhara School in northwest India, Amaravati School in Andhra and the Mathura School in the Ganges valley. It is said that the Kushana period in Indian history was the predecessor to the golden age of the Gupta period. Sanskrit literature began to be developed during this time. The fourth Buddhist council was held in Sanskrit.

Bihar Special: Post-Mauryan Bihar

- A glorious era in the history of Magadha came to an end after the fall of the Maurya Empire.
- **Under Pushyamitra Sunga**, only the areas belonging to the middle Gangetic region and the Chambal river were left. The Greek rulers of Bactria captured the northwestern regions of the empire. They also attacked Punjab and Pataliputra. Pataliputra was probably attacked by Demetrius in 185 BC.
- The ruler of Kalinga, **Kharavela** also invaded Magadha probably in the end of the 1st century BCE.
- Pushyamitra controlled the situation to some extent. Probably he also extended his power till Jalandhar and Sakal (Sialkot). He thwarted the invasion of the Yavanas and organized the Ashwamedha Yagya. He patronized the Brahmin religion and behaved oppressively and aggressively towards the Buddhists. He killed many Buddhist monks and destroyed their stupas and viharas.
- **Demetrius** probably attacked Pataliputra during the period of Sunga dynasty.
- The Sunga dynasty came to an end in 75 BC when the last ruler **Devabhuti** was killed by his secretary **Vasudeva** and laid the foundation of the Kanva dynasty.
- The last ruler of the **Kanva dynasty** was deposed by the Andhra-Satavahanas. It is not clear whether the Andhras were ruling Magadha or not. After some time, in the first century AD, there was a campaign of Kushans in this area.
- There is talk of the **Kushan ruler Kanishka** attacking Pataliputra and giving patronage to the famous **Buddhist scholar Ashvaghosha** in his court.

- Kushan period remains have also been obtained from many places in Bihar.
- After the decline of the Kushan Empire, Magadha was probably controlled by the **Lichchhavis of Vaishali**.
- Some historians, on the contrary, believe that Magadha was controlled by **Shaka-Murundas**.
- The history of this period is obscure.

PREVIOUS YEARS QUESTIONS

1. What is the name of Kalhana's book?
[B.P.S.C. (Pre)2011]
(a) Arthasaratra (b) Indica
(c) Puranas (d) **Rajatarangini**
2. Who was the founder of Karnata dynasty?
(a) **Nanyadev**
(b) Narasimhadeva
(c) Vijaydev
(d) Haridev
(e) none of the above. more than one of the above
3. In which city was the Buddhist council held during the reign of Kanishka?
(a) Magadha (b) Pataliputra
(c) **Kashmir** (d) Rajgriha
4. Gautam Buddha got the status of a deity in the era of which king? [44th B.P.S.C. (Pre) 2001-02]
(a) Ashoka
(b) **Kanishka**
(c) Chandragupta Vikramaditya
(d) Harsh



The Gupta Period

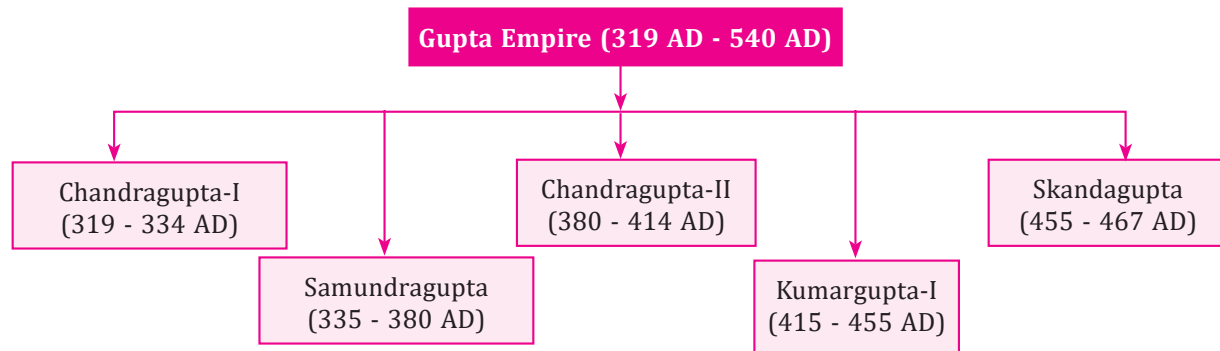


Fig. 9.1: The Gupta Empire

INTRODUCTION

- After the fall of the Maurya empire, the **Kushans in the North** and the **Satvahanas in the Deccan** emerged as the two major political powers.
- Guptas are believed to be **feudatories of the Kushans**. They are most likely **Vaishyas in origin**.
- **They ruled over fertile parts of the Madhyadesha**: Anuganga (middle Gangetic basin), Saketa (modern Ayodhya, Uttar Pradesh), and Magadha (Bihar).
- **Probably an important center of power**: Prayag (modern Prayagraj, Uttar Pradesh) was probably their important center of power. **Prayag Prashasti inscription of Samudragupta** also supports this opinion.
- **Probable state seal**: 'Garuda'
- According to the epigraphic evidence, the founder of the dynasty was a person named "**Gupta**".
- It is regarded as the **Classical Age** or **Golden Age of Ancient India**: all round progress in spheres of art, architecture, Sanskrit literature, stone sculpture, science and technology, metallurgy, and philosophy.
- **Development of North India**: Stable polity, profitable trade, secured and peaceful social set up.
- **Founder of Gupta Dynasty**: **Maharaja Gupta/Sri Gupta** was the first ruler of the dynasty followed by his son **Ghatotkachchh**. These two were called **Maharajas**.

9.1 SOURCES OF INFORMATION

Literary Sources	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Puranas: Vishnu, Vayu, Bhagvata, Matsya (oldest source) etc. • Kamandaka Nitisara written by Shikhara, prime minister of Chandragupta-II
Kavya-Nataka Literature	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vishakhadatta: Devi Chandraguptam and Mudrarakshasa • Shudraka: Marikchhaktikam • Kalidas: Vikramourvashiya • Pravarsena: Setubandha kavya • Vishnu Sharma: Panchatantra • Travel account of Fa-Hein
Inscriptions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mehrauli Iron Pillar Inscription: refers to the achievements of Chandragupta-I • Allahabad Pillar inscription: important source for the reign of Samudragupta • Udayagiri Cave Inscription. • Mathura stone Inscriptions • Sanchi Stone Inscriptions • Bhitari pillar inscription dates to his reign gives the chronology of Guptas and his conflict with Pushyamitra and Huns.

Seals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Seal of Dhruvaswamini, queen of Chandragupta-II. Seal of other officials.
Monument	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Vishnu temple at Tigawa Shiva Temple at Bhumara Parvati Temple at Nachana-Kuthara Buddhist shrines at Sanchi and Bodhgaya Dasavatara Temple at Deogarh, etc.
Coins	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Every ruler minted their own coins based on their own preferences. For example, Tiger type, Lyrist type, Ashvamedha type, Archer type, Chhatra type, Lion-slayer type.

9.2 IMPORTANT RULERS

Ruler	Related Information
Chandragupta-I (319 – 334 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> First important ruler was considered the actual founder of the dynasty. Chandragupta-I was the first to be called Maharajadhiraja (the great king of kings) Married to a Lichchhavi princess Kumaradevi - expanded it through matrimonial alliance. His reign covered regions of South Bihar, Jharkhand and parts of Eastern Uttar Pradesh (Saketa and Prayaga). His accession in about AD 319-20 marks the beginning of the Gupta Samvat (era). First in Guptas who issued gold coins (Dinaras)- bearing the figures of Kumaradevi and Chandragupta.
Samudragupta (335 – 380 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The son of Chandragupta-I, Samudragupta, became the next ruler whose conquests are recorded in Prayaga Prashasti (Eulogy). Ardent follower of Vaishnavism. Was the patron of the great Buddhist scholar Vasubandhu. Prayaga Prashasti/Allahabad pillar inscriptions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> It was composed by Samudragupta's court poet, a scholar and minister, Harisena in classical Sanskrit and provides a detailed account of his reign According to Prayaga Prashasti, Samudragupta conquered Eight kings of Aryavarta. The Allahabad Pillar inscription mentions that Samudragupta defeated twelve rulers in his South Indian Expedition (Dakshinapatha). Samudragupta's policy in South India was different. He did not destroy and annex those kingdoms. Samudragupta performed the Ashwamedh Yajna (sacrifice) after these achievements. He issued gold and silver coins - Ashwamedh coins - with the legend Restorer of the Asvamedha. Kaviraja: Samudragupta was not only a conqueror but also a great poet, musician and patron of learning. He is called Napoleon of India by historian AV Smith. Allahabad pillar inscriptions called him Dharma Prachar Bandhu. Gave permission to the king of Sri Lanka, Meghavarman to build a monastery in Bodh Gaya.
Chandragupta-II (380 – 414 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Coming to the throne, Chandragupta-II defeated the Sakas in western region (Gujarat, Kathiawar and west Malwa), assumed the title of Sakari (destroyer of Sakas), Vikramaditya and ruled from Ujjain. Watermark period of Gupta dynasty. Udayagiri Cave Inscription (Vidisha, MP) and Sanchi inscription give information about him. He established matrimonial alliances with the Nagas and the Vakatakas. Assumed the title of Parama Bhagavata.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Chandragupta-II was the first Gupta ruler to issue silver coins bearing lion figures similar in pattern with Saka coins. Mehrauli iron pillar inscription (Delhi's Qutub-minar complex): records that Chandragupta-II defeated Valikas of Bactria crossing the Sapta Sindhu. His court had nine jewels or Navaratnas: Kalidasa, Amarsinha, Dhanvantari, Varahmihira, Araruchi, Ghatakarna, Kshapranak, Velabhatt, Shanku. Chinese Buddhist monk Fa-Hien visited his court: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> He visited Peshawar, Mathura, Kanauj, Sravasti, Kapilavastu, Kusinagara, Pataliputra, Kasi and Bodh Gaya among other places. He refers to the Gangetic valley as the land of Brahmanism. Gives information on the religious, social and economic condition of the Gupta empire. He did not mention the name of Chandragupta-II.
Kumaragupta I (415 – 455 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Karamdanda (Faizabad) inscription refers to king Kumaragupta I as ruler of 4 oceans, Mandsor inscription as ruler of all earth and copper plate inscription of Damodarpur as Maharajadhiraj. Bilsad (Etah) inscription also mentions Kumaragupta I. Kumaragupta I performed Ashwamedha yajna and assumed titles like Ashwamedha-Mahendra and Mahendraditya. He was also called Shakraditya. Kumaragupta I was the founder of Nalanda University. Himself a devotee of Shiva, Kumaragupta I issued Kartikeya type coins bearing the figure of peacock.
Skandagupta (455 – 467 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Son of Kumaragupta I, Skandgupta, during his lifetime bravely fought and defeated Hunas on the North-Western frontier. His conquest over Pushyamitra is marked in Bhitari Pillar inscription. Got the Sudarshan Lake repaired (Junagadh inscription). The Gupta Empire declined after the death of Skandagupta in 467 AD. Vishnugupta (540 CE- 550 CE) was the last recognized Gupta ruler.

9.3 SOCIO-ECONOMIC SURVEY OF GUPTA PERIOD

Administration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Gupta kings assumed titles: Paramabhattacharaka, Maharajadhiraja, Parameswara, Samrat and Chakravartin. The most important officers under the Guptas were called the Kumaramatyas, with an office of their own called the Adhikarana. Bhukti (province) and Vishaya (province division) were administrative units headed by Uparika and Vishayapati respectively. The king was assisted in his administration by a council consisting of a chief minister, a Senapati or commander-in-chief of the army and other important officials. Bureaucracy was not elaborated as that of Maurya. Fa-Hien's account on the Gupta administration: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> There was no state interference in the individual's life. The administration was so efficient that the roads were kept safe for travelers, and there was no fear of thieves. No restrictions on people's movements Crimes were negligible.
-----------------------	---

	<p style="text-align: center;">Important Offices</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Mahanandanayaka: Justice Delivery ● Mahapratihara: Chief of the Guards ● Gramadhyaksha/ gramika: Village headman ● Dutakas: Associated with Gifts and Grants ● Sandhi-Vigrahika: Minister of Peace and War ● Pilupati: Headed Elephants ● Asvapati: Superintendent of Cavalry ● Nagara Sreshtis: Officers looking after the city administration ● Narapati: Headed Foot Soldiers ● Ranabhandagrika: In charge of stores ● Akshapataladhikrita: Superintendent of Records and Accounts.
Economy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Agriculture, trade, commerce and art and crafts all flourished under Guptas. ● The King's administration facilitated irrigation, ensured measurement and categorization of land into cultivated (Kshetra) and uncultivated (Khila/ Aprahata) lands. ● The Landowner class (Mahattars, Gramika and Kutumbika) became influential as land was a prestigious property to be sold or gifted. ● There was an Increase in land taxes but a decrease in trade and commerce taxes. ● Kulyavapa and Dronavapa: terms related to measurement of land. ● The king collected taxes varying from one-fourth to one-sixth of the produce. ● Two new agricultural taxes: Uparikara (probably a tax imposed on temporary tenants) and Udranga (its exact nature is not clear, but might be water tax or a sort of police tax). ● It is confirmed by a general scarcity of gold coins after the Guptas. Issued less pure gold coins than Kushana. ● The Gupta and post-Gupta period witnessed a comparative decline in the country's trade and commerce. The disruption of the north-western trade route by the Huns. ● Shreni continued to govern the trader's affairs.
Society and Religion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Society became clearly feudalistic, Brahmins (Brahmadiyas & Agraharas) and feudal chiefs received land grants. ● Bhanugupta's Airana (Eran) inscription gives the first evidence of Sati. Child marriage too existed. ● Chandalas were the outcaste i.e., out of the 4-fold varna system and made to reside outside village settlements. ● Vaishnavite or Shaivite Kings got temples constructed for their respective deities. ● Bhagavatism was also identified with Vaishnavism. ● Sanskrit was firmly established as the language of royal inscriptions ● Idol worship became a common feature. ● Gupta kings proclaimed themselves as Bhagavatas (worshippers of Lord Krishna) and Garuda was their emblem. ● Religious texts like Puranas, Mahabharata and Ramayana were expanded in this period. ● Absorption of tribal communities into Brahminical society. ● Assimilation of a large number of foreigners. ● Practice of untouchability intensified. ● Socio-economic status of shudras improved during this period. ● Status of women deteriorated further in the Gupta period. Women lacked property rights. They had full right to their Stridhana. There was no purdah system in the society. ● Dharamshastra (law books) texts belonging to the period reflect a tendency towards lowering the age of marriage for girls and advocating a celibate and austere life for widows. ● Narada Smriti mentions fifteen types of slaves. ● Vishti was forced labour to serve the royal army & officials.

<p>Art and Architecture</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Continued growth of the Ajanta School (Theme: Buddha's life) was accompanied by the emergence of Bagh School (Hoshangabad in Madhya Pradesh). In this cave-walls were decorated (painted) in local themes. Ajanta frescoes depict religious scenes of Yakshas, Gandharvas, Apasaras. Sculpture making made considerable growth with evidence of various stone images. Metal and stone images of Buddha, Shiva and Vishnu are reported from a number of places. Images of God appeared for the first time. Stupa and cave construction reduced and temple construction (Nagara styled) picked up: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dashavatar Temple, Jhansi, U.P. Bhitargaon Temple (Brick) Kanpur, U.P. Parvati Temple, Nachnakuthara, M.P. Vishnu Temple, Jabalpur, M.P. Bagh cave Paintings, Dhar, M.P.
<p>Literature</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Gupta period is considered as the Golden Age of art and literature in ancient India. Development of literature in Gupta period was diverse as it covered from poetry and play, art (dance and music), philosophy, religion to science, mathematics, physiology, astronomy etc. There were Navaratnas, or Nine Gems in the court of Chandragupta-II who were experts of particular fields. Dharmashastras, Narad Smriti, Vishnu Smriti, Brihaspati Smriti and portions of Ramayana and Mahabharata, Bhasa's 12 plays were also written in this period. Most of the literature is developed using ornate Sanskrit language.
<p>Science</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Aryabhata: a great mathematician and astronomer, wrote the book Aryabhatiya in 499 CE. It deals with mathematics and astronomy. He was the first to declare that the earth was spherical in shape. Varahamihira: composed Pancha Siddhantika, the five astronomical systems. Brihadsamhita is a great work by him in Sanskrit literature which deals with a variety of subjects like astronomy, astrology, geography, architecture, weather, animals, marriage and omens. His Brihadjataka is a standard work on astrology. Vagbhata: A disciple of Charaka and distinguished physician of Ayurvedic system of medicine from c. 600 CE. He wrote the Ashtangahridaya ('Heart of Medicine') and the Ashtangasangraha ('Tome on Medicine'). Maharishi Palakapya: He wrote the Hastayurveda, a treatise dealing with the diagnosis and treatment of the major diseases of elephants through medication and surgery. Bhaskara-II: Author of the Lilavati written in the 12th century, which contains important ideas of calculus. Mahavira: A famous 9th century mathematician of Karnataka who lived in the court of the Rashtrakuta king Amoghvarsha, and wrote a book called the Ganitasara Sangraha, which deals with various mathematical problems. Dhanvantri: He was famous for his knowledge of Ayurveda. Kashyapa: A 7th century physician who compiled his Ayurvedic knowledge in a compendium which dealt with the diseases of women and children. Sushruta: The famous author of the Sushruta Samhita, which deals with surgery. Metallurgy also saw technological advancement in Gupta times. The bronze images of Buddha produced on a considerable scale The iron pillar at Mehrauli, Delhi, standing in the open, which has surprisingly not gathered rust even after fifteen centuries.

9.4 DECLINE OF THE GUPTAS

Hun Invasions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Weak successors of Skandagupta could not check growing Hun power and the Hun chief Toramana was able to conquer large parts of western India, stretching up to Eran near Bhopal in central India.
Rise of Feudatories	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Guptas' power was severely curbed by the rise of feudatories. Yashodharman of Malwa, who belonged to the Aulikara feudatory family, successfully challenged the authority of the Guptas.
Gradual Decline in Economic Prosperity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicated by the gold coins of later Gupta rulers, which have less gold content and more of alloy. A gradual disappearance of coins in the post-Gupta period is also observed. It led the kings to make payments in the form of land rather than cash. Due to the loss of western India, the rich revenues from foreign trade and commerce also dropped and this further crippled the Guptas

9.5 AUTHORS/SCHOLARS AND THEIR WORKS

Author	Work	Author	Work
Kalidasa	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Abhijnana Shakuntalam Vikramorvasiyam Malavikagnimitra Kumârasambhava Raghuvansham Meghadootam Ritusamhara Jyotirvid Abharana 	Gunadhya	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Brihatkatha
		Sudraka	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mrichhakatikam
		Varahamihira	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Panchasiddhantika (5 books, Brihatsamhita most notable)
		Susrut	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Susrutsamhita on surgery
		Vagbhata	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ashtanga Hridaya
Dhanvantari	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ayurveda 	Amarasimha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Amarkosh
Kamandaka	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Nitisara 	Aryabhata	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Aryabhatiya, Surya Siddhanta
Vishakhadatta	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mudrarakshasa Devichandraguptam 	Brahmagupta	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Brahmasphutasiddhanta
Bhasa	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Svapnavasavadattam 		

9.6 OTHER IMPORTANT CONCEPTS IN GUPTA

A. Nine Famous Scholars/Navaratnas in the Court of Chandragupta-II

Kalidasa	He wrote Abhijnanashakuntalam , Malavikagnimitram and Vikramorvasiyam .
Amarasimha	He wrote Amarakosha and he was a poet and Sanskrit lexicographer.
Varahamihira	He wrote Panchasiddhantika (a treatise on mathematical astronomy), Brihat Samhita (included clouds, astrology, planetary movements etc) and Brihat Jataka (Vedic astrology).
Dhanvantri	He was a famous physician .
Ghatakarapara	He was an expert in sculpture and architecture .
Shanku	He wrote Shilpashastra based on architecture.
Kahapanaka	He wrote Jyotishastra based on astrology.
Vararuchi	He wrote Prakrit Prakasha (grammar of the Prakrit language).
Vetala Bhatta	He wrote Mantrashastra on music.

B. Coins Issued by the Gupta Kings

Kings	Types of Coins
Chandragupta-I	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Kumaradevi Type
Samudragupta	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dhanurdhari-Archer, Garud; Axe; Ashvamedha Vyaghra-anam (tiger killing); Veenavadan (playing flute).
Chandragupta-II	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ashvarohi, Chhatrahari, Chakra-Vikram type etc.
Kumaragupta	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Gajaroahi, Kadgadhari, Sinhnihanta, Khang-nihanta (i.e. Rhinoceros Slayer), Kartikeya and Apratigh- mudra type.
Skandagupta	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Archer, Lion slayer, swordsman, Horseman

9.7 THE VAKATAKAS OF THE DECCAN

- In peninsular India, especially in **northern Maharashtra** and **Vidarbha**, the Satavahanas were **succeeded by a local power known as the Vakatakas**.
- The **Vakatakas** were contemporaneous of the Guptas in northern India.
- The Vakatakas, who were **Brahmin** themselves, were great **champions of the Brahmanical religion** and performed numerous **Vedic sacrifices**.
- They were **liberal in outlook** and **patronized Buddhism** as well.
- The **rock-cut Buddhist viharas** and **chaityas of the Ajanta caves** (UNESCO World Heritage Site) were built under the patronage of the **Vakataka king, Harisena**.
- Ajanta cave numbers XVI, XVII and XIX** are the best examples of **Vakataka excellence in the field of painting**, in particular the painting titled **Mahabhinishkramana**.
- A style by name **Vaidharbhariti** was developed in Sanskrit during their rule, which was praised by the poets of the likes of Kalidasa, Banabhatta, and Dandin.
- In the case of the Vakatakas, less information is available about their administrative structure. It was **very similar to the Guptas**.
- Their empire was also divided into provinces called **Rashtras or Rajyas**, which were administered by governors known as **Rajyadhikritas**.
- Important rulers of the Vakataka Dynasty

Vindhya Shakti-I	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Founder of the Vakataka dynasty, who probably ruled from Purika. He is credited to have performed a number of Vedic sacrifices and thus revived Brahminical rituals, which were in abeyance during the rule of the later Satavahanas.
Rudrasena-I	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Founder of the Vakataka Nandivardhana branch, which ruled from Nandivardhana (near Nagpur).
Pravarasena-II	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Largest number of Vakataka inscriptions belongs to his reign. He is credited with the founding of a new capital at Pravaraपुरa, which is identified as Paunar in the present- day Wardha district.
Harisena	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Last known king of the Vatsa Gulma line, who not only united the two Vakataka branches but also extended his territories by conquering Kuntala, Avanti, Kalinga, Kosala, Konkan, and Andhra.

Bihar Special: Gupta

- The glory of Bihar was revived under the Gupta dynasty in the 4th century AD.
- The Gupta rulers probably originated in the region between Allahabad and Banaras in the eastern part of modern Uttar Pradesh. They were probably ruling in this region as subordinate feudatories of the Kushanas.
- Chandragupta married Kumara Devi, a Licchavi princess**. Due to this his prestige and power increased and he also got control over the area of Bihar.
- In 320 AD, **Chandragupta** assumed the title of **Maharajadhiraja in Pataliputra**. He **introduced the Gupta Samvat** at the same time. With that begins the history of the Gupta emperors.

- After the death of Chandragupta in 335 AD, his son **Samudragupta** (335 - 375 AD) became the ruler. He was a great conqueror who expanded the Gupta Empire to almost the entire subcontinent. He is also called the **Napoleon of India**. These campaigns of his are discussed in **Prayag Prashasti composed by Harisena**.
- First of all, he defeated the rulers of the Ganga-Jamuna Doab region and merged their kingdoms into his empire. After that he established his power by invading Punjab, Assam, Nepal and Bengal. Then he completed the conquest of the Atvik states situated in the region of the Vindhya ranges.
- His next campaign was in the area of Dakshinapatha. Traveling along the eastern sea coast, he defeated about twelve kingdoms extending up to the region of Tamil Nadu and imposed his sovereignty over them.
- Eventually he defeated the Shaka and Kushan rulers who were ruling in western and northwestern India. His successor Chandragupta-II Vikramaditya conquered the rich regions of Saurashtra and Malwa and annexed them to the Gupta Empire.
- He also strengthened his position by **matrimonial relations with the Vakataka** rulers of western Deccan. He married his daughter Prabhadevi to the Vakataka dynasty.
- He was successful in keeping the doubts under check.
- The reign of **Chandragupta-II** (375 - 412 AD) was the period of zenith of the Gupta Empire.
- The successors of Chandragupta-II had to face foreign invasions. Hunas invaded from the northwestern frontier.
- The invasions of the Hunas were controlled till the reign of Skandagupta (456 - 76), but after that the territories of the Gupta Empire were taken over by the Hunas.
- By the end of the reign of **Buddhagupta** (AD 476 - 96), the empire had disintegrated.
- By 485 AD, the Huns had spread to Central India. Later, Huna ruler Mihirkul also attacked Pataliputra and defeated Narasimhagupta Baladitya and drove him to Bengal.
- During this period **Yashovarman**, the ruler of Malwa fought with the Hunas and also challenged the authority of the Gupta rulers.
- In other areas also the subordinate rulers and feudatories started assuming independent power.
- By the middle of the 6th century AD, the region of Magadha was controlled by the later Gupta dynasty, while the power of the **Maukhari dynasty** was established in some areas of eastern Uttar Pradesh and Bihar.
- In Bengal also the local rulers succeeded in assuming power.
- After the fall of the Maurya Empire, the Gupta rulers again reorganized a vast empire in India at an interval of about five centuries, but their empire was not as centralized as the Maurya Empire. The role of the subordinate rulers and feudal lords was important in this. This class was also very powerful. That's why as soon as the weakness of the central administration was revealed, these subordinate rulers and feudal lords challenged the authority of the Gupta dynasty and established their independent existence. The weakness of the military force and the problems of economic crisis in the empire also contributed significantly to this process of decline.
- The Gupta period is considered to be an era of outstanding achievements in learning, art and cultural life.
- Progress was made in the art and cultural sector during this period, but its influence was limited to the ruling class only. The condition of the general public was not pleasant. The center of this progress was the capital and its allied areas and its effect did not appear in most of the areas of the empire. Nevertheless, it was a glorious chapter in the history of Bihar.
- The names of Varahamihira, Aryabhatta and Brahmagupta are important among the famous scholars of this period. His contribution in the field of mathematics, astronomy and philosophy is unforgettable.
- The Nalanda Mahavihara was established during the Gupta period itself. Its founder was Kumaragupta (414 - 455 AD). Later on, it became a major center of learning where a large number of foreign students also used to come. During this period there was a lot of progress in Sanskrit language.
- Kalidas composed many plays which give information about the social, economic and cultural life of that time. The Bhagavata tradition developed in Hinduism and the present form of Hinduism mainly developed during this period.
- Among the important achievements of this period in the field of art, the Mahabodhi Temple of Bodhgaya and the remains of Nalanda Mahavihara are important.
- Chinese traveler Fa-hein came to India during the reign of Chandragupta-II. He toured India between 405 and 411 AD. He also came to the region of Bihar and stayed in Pataliputra for three years. He has mentioned the pride of this city. In relation to the grand Atalika of this city, he writes that they must have been built by gods and not by humans.

Bihar Special: Post Guptas

- Information about the rule of the post Gupta rulers in some parts of Bihar in the sixth century AD comes from some inscriptions which have been found in the area of Gaya and Shahabad districts.
- The founder of this dynasty was Krishnagupta, but it is not clear what was his relation with the great Gupta rulers.
- There is information about Kumaragupta III, a ruler of this dynasty, expanding his power up to Prayag and defeating the Maukhari ruler. After defeating his successor Damodar Gupta, the Maukhari ruler captured most of Magadha.
- The campaigns of Shashanka, the ruler of Gauda (Bengal) also took place in this region.
- Shashanka was a cruel and philanthropic ruler who badly destroyed the religious places of the Buddhists and also damaged the Mahabodhi tree at Bodhi Gaya.
- Damodargupta's grandson, Devagupta allied with Shashanka and acted against Grahavarman, the Maukhari ruler of Kannauj. Shashanka also killed Grahavarman.
- In retaliation, Rajyavardhan defeated Devagupta and killed him.
- Thus, from the fall of the Gupta Empire till the reign of Harsha, the history of Bihar was witness to immense struggle.
- Post Gupta rulers of Magadha, Maukhari rulers of Kannauj and Gauda rulers of Bengal continued to participate in it.
- In the beginning of the seventh century AD, when Harshavardhan expanded his empire in northern India, some parts of Bihar came under his control. He made Madhavagupta his representative in the area of Magadha among the later Gupta rulers so that he could easily diagnose any aggressive action by Shashanka.
- After the death of Harsha, anarchy again spread in Bihar. Arjuna, a local ruler of Bihar, harmed the Chinese travelers. In retaliation, the kings of Tibet and Nepal jointly attacked Bihar. Probably for some time the sovereignty of Tibet was also established in some parts of Bihar.
- Madhavagupta's son Adityasena put an end to the sovereignty of Tibet. He assumed independent power, assumed royal titles and organized the Ashwamedha Yajna. His kingdom was spread over Magadha, north and eastern Bihar (regions of Munger and Bhagalpur). He probably also had control over eastern Kannauj and Bengal.
- This dynasty declined soon after the death of Adityasena.
- The last ruler was Jivitagupta-II. Around 725 AD, Yashovarman, the ruler of Kannauj killed him and put an end to this dynasty.
- By this time the pride of Pataliputra had also been destroyed.
- The city of Pataliputra was in ruins when the Chinese traveller, Yuan Chwang, came to this area around 635 AD. Some small settlements were scattered at this place.

PREVIOUS YEAR QUESTIONS

1. The era of establishment of Nalanda University is-
[43rd B.P.S.C. (Pre)1999]
(a) Maurya (b) Kushan
(c) **Secret** (d) Pal
2. Why was Nalanda University world famous?
[42nd B.P.S.C. (Pre) 1997-98]
(a) Medical science (b) Logic
(c) **Buddhism philosophy** (d) Chemistry
3. The gradual decline of cities was an important feature of which period?
[40th B.P.S.C. (Pre)1995]
(a) **Gupta period** (b) Pratihara era
(c) Rashtrakutas (d) Satavahana era
4. Which of the following ports was used for North Indian trade during the Gupta period?
[B.P.S.C. (Pre)2019]
(a) Welfare (b) Copper script
(c) Bharoch (d) Cambay
(e) **None of the above/More than one of the above**
5. Which ruling dynasty gave the maximum number of village grants to temples and Brahmins?
[39th B.P.S.C. (Pre)1994]
(a) **Gupta dynasty**
(b) Pal dynasty
(c) Rashtrakutas
(d) Pratihara



Harshvardhan Period (606 AD - 647 AD)

INTRODUCTION

- Decline of the Gupta Empire was followed by a period of **political disorder and disunity** in North India.
- Harshavardhana's reign was established in the beginning of the 7th century CE.

10.1 SOURCES OF INFORMATION

- Harshacharita** written by **Bana** (court poet of Harsha).
- Travel accounts of Hiuen Tsang**: Chinese traveler who visited India in the 7th century CE.
- Dramas written by Harsha: **Ratnavali**, **Nagananda** and **Priyadarshika**.
- Inscriptions: **Madhuben plate inscription** and the **Sonpat inscription** are helpful to know the ecology of Harsha. **Banskhera inscription** contains the signature of Harsha.

10.2 HARSHAVARDHAN (606 CE – 647CE)

- Both Bana and Hiuen Tsang portray social life in the times of Harsha.
- Pushyabhutis were **feudatories of Gupta**. They called themselves **Vardhanas**.
- Important rulers of this dynasty**: Prabhakarvardhana, Adityavardhan and Harshavardhana.
- Harshvardhan was son of **Prabhakarvardhana**.

A. The reign of Harsha

- Harsha's reign marked the **beginning of feudalism in India**.
- Harshavardhana belonged to the **Pushyabhuti Dynasty** also called **Vardhana Dynasty**.
- He was a **Hindu** who **later embraced Mahayana Buddhism**.
- Harshavardhana attacked Shashank of Gauda Kingdom and established his control over regions of Bengal, Bihar and Odisha and befriended Bhaskarvarman of Kamrup (Assam).
- Vallabhi King Dhruvabhata in Gujrat too was defeated and a truce was negotiated with him by marriage of Harsha's daughter to Dhruvabhata.

- He moved his capital to **Kannauj**.
- He assumed titles of **Uttarapathanatha** or **Uttarapathapati** (Lord of the North).
- While marching southwards, Harshavardhan conquered regions of Malwa and after crossing Narmada, he was defeated by Pulkeshin II in the **Battle of Narmada**.
- Harshavardhana was greatly influenced by the personality of **Hiuen Tsang** and **organized a Buddhist assembly at Kannauj under his chairmanship**.
- Hiuen Tsang**, in his book, has appreciated Harshvardhan's justice and munificence (generosity).
- Harshavardhan, the **able military commander** and **good administrator**, died in 647 CE without heir and is regarded as the **last Hindu King to have ruled a large part of North India**.
- Hence, his **death marks the end of Pushyabhuti dynasty** and **beginning of Muslim rule over North India**.

B. Harsha's Military Conquests

- First expedition**: Harsha drove out Sasanka from Kannauj. He made **Kannauj his new capital**. This made him the most powerful ruler of north India.
- Harsha **fought against Dhruvasena-II of Valabhi** and defeated him.
- Accounts of **Hiuen Tsang** and the **inscriptions of Pulakesin-II** provide the details of the campaign against Western Chalukya ruler Pulakesin II.
- Aihole inscription of Pulakesin-II** mentions the defeat of Harsha by Pulakesin, who after this achievement assumed the title Paramesvara. Hiuen Tsang's accounts also confirm the victory of Pulakesin.
- Nepal** had accepted Harsha's overlordship.
- Harsha established his **control over Kashmir** and its ruler sent tributes to him.
- He also maintained cordial relations with Bhaskaravarman, the ruler of **Assam**.
- Last military campaign**: against the kingdom of Kalinga in Orissa and it was a success.
- The regions of modern **Rajasthan, Punjab, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar and Orissa** were under his direct control.
- Kashmir, Sindh, Vallabhi and Kamarupa** acknowledged his sovereignty.

C. Harsha and Buddhism

- He became an **ardent Hinayana Buddhist**.
- Hiuen Tsang converted him to **Mahayana Buddhism**.
- Harsha **prohibited the use of animal food in his kingdom**.
- He erected **thousands of monasteries and stupas** and **established travelers resting places** all over his kingdom.
- Once in five years he convened a gathering of representatives of all religions.
- He brought the Buddhist monks together frequently to **discuss and examine the Buddhist doctrine**.

D. Kannauj Assembly

- Harsha organized a **religious assembly at Kannauj to honor the Chinese pilgrim Hiuen Tsang** towards the close of his reign.

- He **invited representatives of all religious sects**. It was attended by scholars from the Nalanda University, Hinayanists, Mahayanists, Brahmins and Jains.
- Hiuen Tsang explained the values of Mahayana doctrine and established its superiority over others.
- However, violence broke out and there was also an attempt on the life of Harsha.

E. Allahabad Conference

- **Hiuen Tsang** mentions the conference held at Allahabad, known as **Prayag**.
- It was the one among the conferences routinely convened by Harsha **once in five years**.
- Harsha **gave away his enormous wealth as gifts** to the members of all religious sects.

10.3 SOCIO-ECONOMIC SURVEY OF HARSHAVARDHAN PERIOD

Administration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Harsha governed his empire on the same lines of Gupta. • The basic unit of administration was a village. • Offices under the king became hereditary as Harisena who was a 'Mahadandanayaka', or Chief Judicial Officer inherited the office from his father. • One person could bear more than one office as Harisena also held offices of 'Kumaramatyā' and 'Sangrahvighrahika' • Important officers: The 'Sreshthi' (Chief Banker or Merchant), the 'Sarthavaha' (Leader of Merchant Caravans), 'Prathama Kulika' (Chief Craftsman), and the 'Kayasthas' (head of the scribes). • Maintenance of public records is an important feature of Harsha rule. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Nilopitu: archive of the recorded both good and bad events • Army: Harsha's army consisted of the traditional four divisions- foot, horse, chariot and elephant. Cavalry and the elephants were much more than that of the Mauryan army.
Economy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Taxes imposed on ports, income from mines and tributes from vassals were other important revenue sources. • One-sixth of the produce was collected as tax and was the main source of revenue. • Overall, trade and commerce are said to have declined during this phase. • Rise of self-sufficient economy
Society	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hiuen-Tsang mentions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ There were castes, a mix of sub-castes, untouchables and outcastes. ○ Forced labor was absent. ○ Sudras practiced agriculture. ○ Three ways of disposal of the dead – cremation, water burial and exposure in the woods. • Fourfold division of society: Brahmins, Kshatriyas, Vaishyas and Shudras • Brahmins were the privileged section of the society and were given land grants by the kings. • Institution of Swayamvara (the ceremony of choosing a husband) had become dysfunctional. • Widow remarriage was not allowed and Sati & dowry systems were prevalent.

Religion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> As Harshavardhan was a secular king, all sects of religion peacefully coexisted but Brahmanism grew more than others. Harshvardhan was a Shiva devotee. Later he converted to Mahayana Buddhism. According to Hieun Tsang, Harsha held the Allahabad conference once every 5 years.
Art and Culture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A patron of art and literature, Harshavardhan patronized the Banabhatta, Mayura, Matanga Divakara etc. Banabhatta (biographer of Harsha) wrote Harshacharita, Kadambari & Parvatiparinay. Harsha was a poet and composed three Sanskrit plays: Nagananda, Ratnavali, and Priyadarshika. Harshavardhan held 5 yearly donation (Daan) ceremonies at Prayag (Allahabad Conference) and donated money in favor of: Administration, Royal Household, Scholars and Religion. Brick temple of Laxamana at Sirpur was built during Harsha rule. Hiuen Tsang describes the glory of the monastery with many storeys built by Harsha at Nalanda.
Nalanda University	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The most famous educational institutions were the Hinayana University of Valabhi and the Mahayana University of Nalanda. The term Nalanda means “giver of knowledge”, founded by Kumaragupta-I during the Gupta period. Patronized by his successors and later by Harsha. Renowned professors: Dingnaga, Dharmapala, Sthiramati and Silabadhra. Dharmapala (native of Kanchipuram) became the head of Nalanda University. Though it was a Mahayana University, different religious subjects like the Vedas, Hinayana doctrine, Sankhya and Yoga philosophies were also taught. Medium of instruction was Sanskrit.

Bihar Special: Bihar After Harsha

- After the disintegration of Harsha's empire, the Pala dynasty emerged in eastern India in the middle of the eighth century AD.
- The founder of Pala dynasty was Gopal who soon expanded his rule in Bihar.
- The Pala rulers also participated in the struggle for possession of Kannauj for some time.
- Dharmapala (770 - 810 AD) attacked Kannauj in the last quarter of the eighth century. He organized a grand court by appointing Chakrayudha as the ruler of Kannauj and assumed the title of Uttarapathaswamin.
- His son Devapala (810 - 850 AD) also adopted an expansionist policy. He expanded his power in Pragyajyotishpur in the northeast, Nepal in the north and Orissa on the eastern coast. He also participated in the struggle of Kannauj. According to some historians, he also fought with the states of the Deccan. During his time there were also friendly relations with Southeast Asia. At the request of Balputradeva, the ruler of Java, he gave a grant of five villages for the maintenance of a Bihar at Nalanda. He is famous as the patron of Buddhism.
- The decline of the Pala dynasty began after the death of Devpal. During the reign of Mihirbhoj and Mahendrapala, the Pratiharas captured most of eastern Uttar Pradesh and Bihar.
- In the eleventh century there was a resurgence of the Pala dynasty under Mahipala. He captured all the territories of Bengal and Magadha, but his successors were weak. Taking advantage of this, the Kaivartas became powerful in Bengal and the Sena rulers established their kingdom in northern Bihar and some areas of Bengal.
- The power of the Palas remained confined to some parts of Magadha.
- After the death of Rampal, the Gahadwalas also expanded to Shahabad and Gaya in Bihar.
- The Sena rulers, Vijayasena and Ballalasena also expanded their power and established their control up to the east of Gaya. In this atmosphere of anarchy, the invasions of the Turks started in Bihar by the end of the twelfth century.
- In the Maner copper plate of Govindchandra, the ruler of Gahadwal dynasty, there is a mention of a tax named Turushkdand. This tax was collected from the farmers of this region and from this the means were obtained to stop the attacks of the Turks.

- The Pala rulers were Buddhist. He patronized Buddhist educational institutions.
- Vikramshila Mahavihara was established by Dharmapala. He also donated 200 grams to Nalanda Mahavihara.
- The universities of Odantapuri and Jagdal were also organized during the Pala reign.
- The Palas had close relations with Tibet.
- Among the Buddhist scholars Shantarakshita and Atisha Dipankara went to Tibet during this period.
- Even after the campaigns of Bakhtiyar Khilji, Buddhist monk (Dharmaswamin) came to Bihar from Tibet to get education in Nalanda Mahavihara.
- Commercial and friendly relations were also maintained with the islands of South-East Asia. The Shailendra dynasty ruler of that region obtained permission (from Devapala) to build a Buddhist temple at Nalanda.
- Devpal also gave financial grants for the maintenance of that temple.
- The Pala rulers also gave special encouragement to sculpture.
- Beautiful images of Gautama Buddha and Hindu deities were made in shiny black stone.
- The Pala era was the best in making bronze images.

PREVIOUS YEAR QUESTIONS

- At the time of Hiuen Tsang's visit to India, the most famous city for the production of cotton cloth was- [41st B.P.S.C. (Pre)1996]
 - Varanasi
 - Mathura**
 - Pataliputra
 - Kanchi
- Poet Baan was a resident of [41st B.P.S.C. (Pre)1996]
 - Pataliputra**
 - Thaneshwar
 - Bhojpur
 - None of the above
- Who was the king of Suvarnabhumi who established a Buddhist Vihara at Nalanda and requested Devapala through his messenger to donate five villages for its maintenance? [B.P.S.C. (Pre)2018]
 - Dharnindra
 - Sangramdhananjay
 - Balputradev**
 - Chudamanivarman
 - None of the above/More than one of the above
- Which Chinese traveler visited India during the reign of Harshavardhana? [66 B.P.S.C. (Pre)2015]
 - Fahien
 - Hiuen Tsang**
 - Itsing
 - Taranath
- Who wrote the book 'Harshacharita'? [47th B.P.S.C. (Pre)2005]
 - Aryabhatta
 - Banabhatta**
 - Vishnugupta
 - Parimalgupta



Sangam Age: The History of South India

INTRODUCTION

- **South of the Deccan plateau**, the land between the Venkatam hills and Kanyakumari is known as the **Tamilaham**
- The Sangam texts mention three chiefs: **Chola, Chera and Pandya**.
- **Sangam Period**: Period between the **1st century B.C.** to the end of **2nd century A.D.** in Southern India.
- There existed **three Sangams (Academy of Tamil poets)** in ancient Tamil Nadu popularly called **Muchchangam**. These Sangams flourished under the **royal patronage of the Pandyas**.
- **2nd and 13th rock edicts of Ashoka** named 4 neighborly kingdoms of South India: Cholas, Cheras (Kerala putras of Malabar) Pandyas and Satyaputra.

- The Greek authors like **Megasthenes, Strabo, Pliny and Ptolemy** mention about commercial trade contacts between the West and South India.
- **The Hathigumpha inscription of Kharavela of Kalinga** mentions Tamil kingdoms.

11.1 SANGAM LITERATURE

- Sangam literature is the main source of **History of ancient South India i.e., Tamilkam**.
- It was compiled **during the 3rd century BC to 3rd century CE** & was composed in **poetic format** around themes of **love and war**.
- Sangam was a **college or assemblies of Tamil poets** held under royal patronage.

Sangam	Venue	Chairmanship	Remark
1 st Sangam	Old Madurai	Agastasya	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Attended by gods and legendary sages. • No literary work of this Sangam is available.
2 nd Sangam	Kapadapuram	Agastasya	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Only Tolkappiyam (grammar book) survives from this.
3 rd Sangam	New Madurai	Nakkirar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A few of these Tamil literary works have survived and are a useful source to reconstruct the history of the Sangam period.

A. Sangam Literature is Broadly Divided Into 2 Groups

- **Narrative texts**: called **Melkanakku/Eighteen major works** consisting of **Ettuthogai** (Collection of 8 long poems) & **Pattupattu** (Collection of 10 small poems). Narrative texts are considered heroic poetry in which heroes and wars are glorified. They also give ideas of state formation in South India.
- **Didactic texts**: called **Kilkannaku/Eighteen minor works** consisting of **Tirukural** and **Naladiyar**. These texts prescribe a code of conduct for kings & society.

B. Significant Sangam Literature

- **Silappadikaram**: Written by **Ilango Adigal**. It is about the love affair of Kovalan, Kanagga and Madhavi. Later, a Kanagga Cult developed in South India.
- **Manimekhalai**: Written by **Sittalai Sattanar**, continues the story of Silappadikaram in the next generation in which **Manimekhalai** is the daughter of Madhavi and Kovalan.

- **Tolkappiyam**: Written by **Tolkappiyar** was product of 2nd Sangam and it is basically a work on **Tamil grammar & poetics**.
- **Thirukkural**: Deals with philosophy and was written by **Tiruvallur**.
- **Jeevak Chintamani**: Authored by a Madurai-based Jain ascetic **Tiruttakkatevar** (10th century). The epic is a supernatural fantasy story of a prince who is the perfect master of all arts, perfect warrior, and perfect lover with numerous wives.
- **Kundalakesi**: It appears to be a tragic love story about a Hindu or Jain girl of merchant caste named Kundalakesi who falls in love with Kalan – a Buddhist criminal on a death sentence, written by Nathakuthanar.
- **Valayapathi**: one of the five great Tamil epics, but one that is almost entirely lost. It is a story of a father who has two wives.

11.2 SOUTH INDIAN DYNASTIES

- The Sangam literature discusses the 3 main Kingdoms: **Chola, Pandya & Chera** and about their rivalry.

Cholas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Capitals: first, at Uraiyyur and later shifted to Puhar (Tanjore). Territory: N-E to the territory of Pandya, between Pennar & Velar Rivers. Emblem: Tiger Centers of trade and industry: Kaverippattanam, Uraiyyur and Arikamedu (Puducherry). Many Sangam Poems mention the Battle of Venni where he defeated the confederacy of Cheras, Pandyas and eleven minor chieftains. Elara was the earliest known king. He conquered Sri Lanka & ruled over it for 50 years. Karikala was the greatest king. He founded Puhar & also built irrigation tanks near river Kaveri to provide water for reclaimed land from forest for cultivation.
Pandyas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Capital: Madurai (center of trade and industry) Territory: Southernmost & South eastern portion of peninsula. Emblem: Carp (fish) Pandyas had trade relations with Romans. They were first mentioned by Megasthenes. They also find mention in the Ramayana & Mahabharata. Nedunjelian, known for his kingdom's wealth and prosperity, was the most noteworthy Pandya ruler. Maduraikkanji was written by Mangudi Maruthainar which describes the socio-economic condition of the flourishing seaport of Korkai.
Cheras	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Capital: at Vanji (Malabar). Important seaports: Tondi and Musiri. Territory: West & North of Pandya. Emblem: Bow and Arrow. Senguttuvan (Red Chera) was the most important ruler. He established the Kannagi or Pattini Cult; Kannagi became the object of worship. He was the first King from South India to send an ambassador to China. His military achievements have been chronicled in epic Silappathikaram. He enjoyed the reputation of being highly ethical or virtuous. Gajabahu was his contemporary Sri Lankan King. Karrur and Mujirispattanam were important centers of international trade Romans settled at Muziris Pattanam. The Temple of Roman emperor Augustus was constructed here.

11.3 SANGAM PERIOD: POLITY, ECONOMY, SOCIETY, RELIGION AND CULTURE

Polity and Administration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Form of government: hereditary monarchy Kingdom was divided into Mandalam, Nadu (province), Ur (Town), Sirur (Small village), Perur (Big Village) Each of the dynasties had a royal emblem: tiger for Cholas, carp for Pandyas, and bow for Cheras. King was called Ko Mannan, Vendan, Korraivan or Iraivan. He was the center of the administration. Avai was the court of the crowned monarch. Amaichar (ministers), Anthanar (priests), Dutar (envoys), Senapatiyar (military commanders) and Orrar (spies) were the 5 important officers that assisted the King. Revenue Administration: Karai – land tax; Ulgu – custom duties; Iravu – Forced gift/extra demand; Irai – tribute paid by feudatories; Variyar – Tax collector.
----------------------------------	---

Economy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Agriculture was the chief occupation. Rice was the most common crop. ● People were pastoralists, hunters, fishermen although they also produced rice. ● Regular system of taxation was not seen. ● Items of Export: Maslin, glass beads, pearls, sandalwood, perfumes, black pepper (Yavanapriya), tortoise shell, medicines, animals and birds. ● Items of Imports: Gold, Silver, Munga, wine, olive oil, dry fruits, raw glass, ivory, copper, tin, medicine and slaves. ● Gold and Silver in huge quantities were brought into India and made the trade greatly in favor of India. ● Pliny, the Roman author and member of senate, in his Naturalis Historia (77 CE) regrets the drain out of huge amounts of gold and silver to India. ● Ptolemy in his Geographia (Geography) and Strabo in his Geographica (Geography) also describe this trade imbalance of the Roman empire with India. ● Discovery of Monsoon winds by Hippalus around 45-47 CE further promoted the trade between India and the west. ● Tamilmandalam served as the zone of interaction for silk trade with China. ● Land revenue, customs duty on foreign trade and booty captured in wars were the main sources of the income.
Society	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Tamil people were primarily pastoral and traces of early megalithic life appear in the Sangam texts. ● Social classes: Arasars (Ruling Class), Kadasiyar (lower classes people), Aanthanars (priests), Vanigar (involved with trade and commerce), Vellalar (Agriculturists). ● In the Marutham region, the Vellalas or the rich peasants were dominant. ● Some social (Parathavar, Panar, Eyinar, Kadambar, Maravar, Pulaiyar) and other primitive (Thodas, Irulas, Nagas, Vedars) tribal groups also lived in the Sangam age.
Position of Women	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● There were women poets like Avvaiyar, Nachchellaiyar, and Kakkaiyapadiniyar who flourished and contributed to Tamil literature. ● Love marriage was accepted in Sangam society. ● Yet, the widows were treated badly as Sati was prevalent.
Religion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Murugan was the most important deity of the Sangam age and Nadu Kal (Hero Stone) was also commonly worshiped remembering the bravery of soldiers. ● Kurinji (hilly tracks), Mullai (pastoral), Marudam (agricultural), Neydal (coastal) and Palai (desert) are the five types of the lands mentioned in the Tolkappiyam. Each type of land was associated with a distinct activity and a related deity: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Kurinji- Hunting; Murugan 2. Mullai- cattle-rearing; Vishnu (Mayon) 3. Marudam- agriculture; Indra 4. Neydal- Fishing, Salt-manufacturing; Varunan 5. Palai- Robbery; korravai
Fine Arts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Poetry, music and dancing were popular. ● Liberal donations were given to poets by the kings, chieftains and nobles. ● The royal courts were crowded with singing bards called Panar and Viraliyar. ● They were experts in folk songs and folk dances. ● A variety of Yazhs and drums are referred to in the Sangam literature. ● Dancing was performed by Kanigaiyar. Koothu was the most popular entertainment of the people.

11.4 END OF THE SANGAM AGE

- Towards the end of the third century CE, the Sangam Age slowly witnessed its decline.
- The **Kalabhras** occupied the Tamil country for about two and a half centuries.
- **Jainism** and **Buddhism** flourished and expanded during this period.
- The Pallavas in northern Tamil Nadu and Pandyas in southern Tamil Nadu drove the Kalabhras out and established their own empire and established their rule.

11.5 GLOSSARY

Shreni/Guilds	Shreni is a group in which communities of merchants were organized
Sartha	It was a mercantile group (caravan trading corporation).
Pattini cult	This cult was based on the worship of Kannigi , which was started by Senguttuvan .
Akam	It is a category of Sangam literature that idolizes love and its various aspects, while Puramo deals with war and kings.
Ula	Minor form of literature dealing with the Kings.
Katikai	It is an assembly of learned people .
Ur	It is an assembly of village elders .
Manrams	Village was the fundamental unit of administration, which was administered by local assemblies called Manrams .
Virakkal (Nadukul)	Practice of erecting monuments for the dead soldiers and worshipping them.
Kanatikan	Chief of scribes
Kavalmaram /Kadimaram	During the Sangam Age, a tutelary tree called Kadimaram or Kavalmaram was planted by the rulers at a central place in the town and they took great care to protect the tree.
Kolu	Hard iron tip fixed to a wooden plough share.
Emporium	Coastal towns associated with foreign trade.
Setthikula	Family of merchants and bankers .
Sattasai or Gathasaptasati	An anthology of 700 verses in Marathi Prakrit (Hala's reign) .
Aadi Perukku festival	18 th day of the Tamil month of Adi (July-August) celebrated in Kaveri basin since the Chola Ages. A water ritual celebrated by women to honor nature.
Kammarakula	Family of metalsmiths .
Dhannavanjakula	Family of grain merchants .
Satthavahaputta	Son of a Caravan trader .
Pannikakula	Family of greengrocers .
Atavirakkhikakula	Family of forest guards .

PREVIOUS YEAR QUESTIONS

- Which of the following dynasties is not mentioned in the Sangam literature?[41st B.P.S.C. (Pre)1996]
 - Kadamba**
 - Cher
 - Chola
 - Pandyas
- Why was 'Uraiyur' famous in the Sangam age? [39th B.P.S.C. (Pre)1994]
 - Important center of spice trade
 - Important center of cotton trade**
 - Important trading center of foreign trade
 - Important center of internal trade
- Who is/are the main kingdoms described in the Sangam texts?
 - Chola
 - Cher
 - Pandyas
 - Kannauj
 - More than one of the above/None of the above**
- Where did the second Sangam take place?
 - Ancient Madurai
 - Kapatapuram**
 - Modern Madurai
 - Tanjore
 - None of the above / More than one of the above
- The important deities of the Sangam age were –
 - Murugan**
 - Indra
 - Varunan
 - Nadukal
 - None of the above / More than one of the above



South Indian Kingdoms: Pallavas, Chalukyas and Rashtrakutas

12.1 PALLAVAS

- Pallavas are **identical with the Pulindas** mentioned in Ashoka's Inscriptions.
- Pallavas **ruled from Kanchi** and **Mahabalipuram/ Mamallapuram as their capital**.
- They gained prominence after the eclipse of the **Satavahana dynasty** in the third century CE, under whom the Pallavas served as feudatories.
- Pallavas were instrumental in spreading Indian culture in South-East Asia.

A. Important Rulers

Mahendravarman I (600 - 630 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He was defeated by Chalukya King Pulkeshin-II. • Titles assumed: Gunabhara, Satyasandha, Chettakari (temple-maker) Chitrakarapuli (painter), Vichitrachitta and Mattavilasa. • Mandagapattu inscriptions mention the beginning of rock-cut temple constructions. • He was a versatile genius having expertise over painting, music and literature; composed a satirical drama Mattavilasa Prahasanam in Sanskrit. • Music inscriptions at Kudumiamalai were ascribed to him.
Narshimhavarman I (630 - 668 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Narshimhavarman-I defeated the Chalukya King Pulkeshin-II at the battle of Manimangalam as per the Kuram copper plate inscriptions. • Assumed title of Mamalla (great wrestler). • Founder of Mamallapuram or Mahabalipuram and the monolithic rathas were erected during his reign. • On conquering Chalukyan capital Vatapi, he assumed the title of Vatapikonda. • He sent a naval expedition to Sri Lanka and restored the throne of Sri Lankan prince-Manavarma. • Chinese traveler and Buddhist monk Hieun Tsang visited Kanchi during his reign.
Narsimhavarman II (690 - 725 CE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Also known as Rajsimha, he assumed titles of Shankar Bhakta, Agmapriya etc. • He sent embassies to China. • Was interested in developing the art and architecture: Shore temple & Kailasanatha temple were built during his reign. • Dandin- Sanskrit scholar lived in his court. • Patronized Perundevannar who translated Mahabharata in Tamil and named Bharathavenba. • End of Pallava dynasty: Chola king Aditya-I defeated the last Pallava ruler Aparajita and seized the Kanchi region.

- Other notable rulers were **Nandivarman, Parmeshwarvarman-I and Parmeshwarvarmn-II**.

B. Socio-economic conditions

Administration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pallavas promoted agriculture and sea-trade and collected huge wealth which is reflected in the grand temple-architecture of this time. • Pallava kingdom was divided into Kottams. • In Pallava administration land grants were given to Brahmans (Brahmadeya) and to temples Devadhana and were exempted from taxation. • Group of villages were called as 'Nadu'
-----------------------	---

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Group of Nadus were called as 'Nagaram' (Organisation of merchants) ● Group of Nagarams were called as 'Manadalam' ● Sabhas (assemblies) consisting of brahmin land owners functioned through smaller assemblies/committees that looked after irrigation, agriculture, roads, and temples. ● Non- brahmin land owners' assemblies were called 'Ur'. ● Well organized administrative system with a well-trained army.
Society & Religion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Four-fold caste system became rigid & Brahmana occupied the dominant position as Pallava were orthodox Brahmanical Hindus. ● Bhakti Movement received promotion under Pallavas. ● Shaiva and Vaishnav sages promoted Shiva and Vishnu bhakti (devotion). ● Shaiva sage-poets were called as "Nayanars" (Important Nayanars: Thirunavukkarasar or Appar, Sundarar or Sundaramurti, Sambandar, Manikkavasar) ● Vaishnav sage-poets were called "Alvars" (Important Alvars: Perialvar, Andal-poetess, Nammalvar, Kulashekhar). ● The Pallava period witnessed the decline of Jainism & Buddhism.
Literature, Art and Architecture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Kanchi developed as a great center of education, culture and trade. The Ghatika (centers of learning) at Kanchi was very popular. ● Tamil language and literature along with Sanskrit flourished under Pallavas. ● Periyapuram: Collection of songs in love and devotion of Shiva. ● Nalayir-Divya-Prabandham: Collection of songs in love and devotion of Vishnu. ● Under Pallavas, the basic features of the Dravidian architecture i.e. Vimana, Mandapam and Gopuram became vividly developed. ● The five rathas, popularly called as the Panchapandavar rathas, signifies five different styles of temple architecture. ● 'Open Art Gallery' at Mamallapuram remains an important monument bearing the sculptural beauty of this period. ● During Pallavas rule temple architecture developed in 4 styles under various kings: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Mahendravarman-I: small rock-cut temples were made and called as 'Manadapas'; examples are Bhairavakonda temple and Anantheshwara temple at Undavalli. 2. Narsimhavarman-I: 'mandapas' became bigger, Mahabalipuram/ Mamallapuram city was founded and a number of monolithic Ratha (Chariot) temples were constructed like the Panchapandavar rathas. Important Mandapams are of Varaha, Mahishasuramardhini and Tirumurthi. 3. Rajasimha: free-standing or structural temples started to be built. Shore, Olakkaneshwara and Mukunda Nayanar Temples in Mahabalipuram and Kailash Nath Temple and Vaikuntha Perumal temple at Kanchipuram were constructed with this feature. 4. Nandivarman and later Pallavas: temples continue to be constructed in Rajasimha style. Matagenswara and Muktheeswarar temples are examples of this ● Sittannavasal paintings belonged to this period. ● Dakshinachitra (Commentary) was compiled during the reign of Mahendravarman I. ● The Mamandur inscription contains a note on the notation of vocal music.

12.2 CHALUKYAS OF VATAPI

- Founded by **Pulakesin I**, Chalukyas ruled the extensive **Deccan region** between 6th and 12th century CE with the capital at **Badami (Vatapi)**.
- Chalukyas were involved in continued struggle against Pallavas.

- **Pulakesin-II (608 CE - 642 CE):**
 1. The **Aihole inscription** issued by Pulakesin-II substantiates that he was **the most important ruler of the dynasty**.
 2. **Ravikirti**, the court poet of Pulakesin-II and composer of Aihole inscription was a **Jain**.
 3. Pulakesin-II **defeated Harshavardhan** and limited his southward expansion till Narmada.
 4. He also defeated Kadambas of Banavasi and the Gangas of Mysore and established his suzerainty.
 5. Pulakesin-II emerged victorious in the first struggle with Pallavas but he was **defeated by Narasimhavarman-I (Vatapikonda) of Pallavas (Kanchi)** who captured the capital Vatapi (Badami).
 6. Pulakesin-II **sent an ambassador to the court of Persian King Khusrav**.
 7. **Huien Tsang**, The Buddhist pilgrim from China, visited Chalukyas' Kingdom during his reign.
- **Last of the rulers:** Kirtivarman-II. He was defeated by **Dantidurga, the founder of the Rashtrakuta dynasty**.
- **Socio-Economic conditions:**

Administration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Chalukyas were highly centralized unlike Chola and Pallavas. Units (villages) were in direct control of central authorities. ● Chalukyas maintained a great naval force and small but well organized standing army. ● Army officers were put to civil duties whenever an emergency arose.
Economy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Rocky and infertile land limited the income from land for Chalukyas. ● Overall decline of trade and commerce in India during this period, therefore the Chalukyas conducted invasions and plunder of the neighboring regions. ● Arab traders were given patronage at the west coast under Chalukyas
Social life and Religion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Chalukyas of Badami practiced Brahmanism but respected other sects of religion too. ● Expansion of Brahmanism is reflected by the building of temples in honor of Vishnu, Shiva and other gods. ● Religious sphere of life became more ritualistic. ● Huien Tsang mentioned about the decline of Buddhism and progress of Jainism in western Deccan. ● Importance was given to Vedic rites and rituals. Pulakesin-I performed the Ashvamedha sacrifice.
Literature, Art and Architecture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Chalukyas contributed to the growth of Prakrit language and literature. ● Ajanta art continued to grow under the patronage of Chalukyas. ● The fusion of Nagara and Dravidian style i.e. Vesara Style of temples started to appear during Chalukyas' time but they distinctively developed under Rashtrakutas and Hoysalas. ● Aihole, Badami and Pattadakal are important centers of structural temples. ● Ajanta (Cave paintings), Ellora and Nasik have some of the Cave temples. ● Number of rock-cut halls (Chaityas) were constructed and granted to Jain monks. ● Division of Chalukya temples- two stages: ● First stage: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. It was represented by the temples at Aihole and Badami. Important temples found at Aihole (among the seventy)- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ladh Khan temple is a low, flat-roofed structure consisting of a pillared hall (b) Durga temple resembles a Buddha Chaitya (c) Huchimalligudi temple (d) Jain temple at Meguti 2. Temples at Badami: Muktheeswara temple and the Melagutti Sivalaya ● Second stage: represented by the temples at Pattadakal (UNESCO World Heritage site). There are ten temples here- four in the northern style and six in the Dravidian style.

12.3 IKSHVAKUS

- After the fall of the **Satavahanas**, there arose the Ikshvakus in the **Eastern part** of the **peninsula**. They built monuments at **Nagarjunakonda** and **Dharanikonda**.
- They began providing land grants in the **Krishna-Guntur region**, where their **copper-plate inscriptions** have been found.
- Their rule ended with their conquest by the **Pallavas of Kanchi**.

12.4 THE KADAMBA KINGDOM

- This kingdom was founded by **Mayurasharman**, a learned **Brahmana (345 - 365 AD)** who established his rule in **northern Karnataka** and **Konkan** in the **4th century AD**.
- Their capital was at **Vaijyanti** or **Banavasi** in **North Kanara district** in **Karnataka**.
- **Mayurasharman** came to receive education at **Kanchi**, but he was driven out unceremoniously.
- Then, he set up his camp in a forest and defeated the **Pallavas** with the help of forest tribes.
- He performed **18 ashwamedha sacrifices** and granted a number of villages to Brahmanas.
- **Kakusthavarana** maintained matrimonial relations with the **Ganges** and the **Guptas**. After his death, **Kadambas** split up into **Banavasi** and **Tripuravata**. The rulers of this dynasty were **Brahmanas** and still gave land grants to **Jainas** too.

12.5 THE KALABHRAS

- They led a revolt in the **6th century AD** against the existing social and political order in south India. It affected the **Pallavas** and other neighboring contemporaries and their revolt was so strong that it could be put down only through the joint efforts of **the Pandyas, the Pallavas and the Chalukyas of Badami**.
- They imprisoned the rulers of the **Cholas, Cheras** and the **Pandyas**. They established their hold in **Tamil Nadu**.
- They put an **end to the Brahmadeya rights** granted to the Brahmanas in numerous villages.
- They patronized **Buddhism** and **Jainism**.
- **Sanskrit** and **Prakrit languages** penetrated the Tamil region resulting in the development of a new script- **Vattezhuthu**.

Additional Information

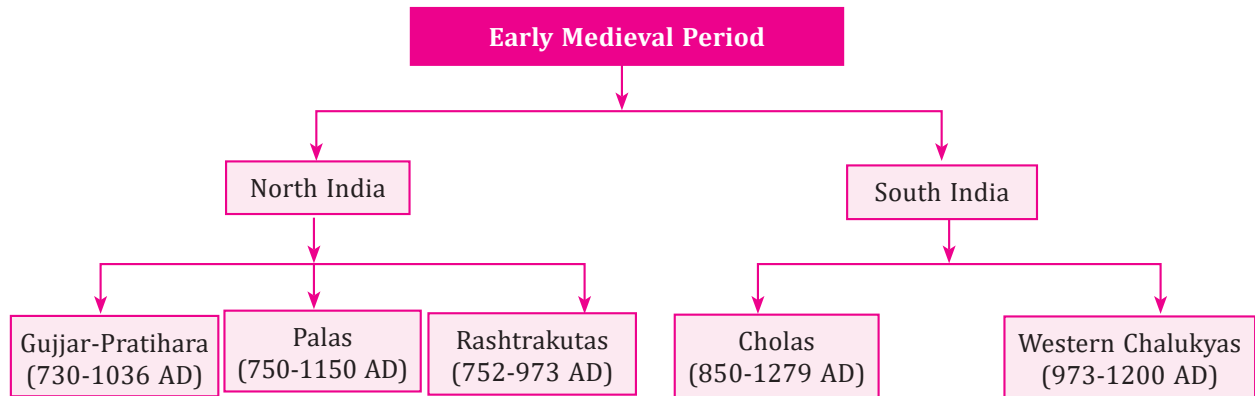
- Epics like **Seevaka Chinthamani** and **Kundalakesi** were written during this period. **Nigandus** (Tamil thesaurus) were also composed during this period.
- **Jain Pali** remained an important educational center. **Sarva Nandhi** and **Vajra Nandhi** were the popular Jain scholars.
- Tamil Siddhars like **Thirumular** preached philosophical ideas.
- Buddhist educational institutions were called **Ghatikas**. Scholars like **Buddhadatta, Buddhaghosa** and **Bodhidharma** lived during this period.
- During the end of the Kalabhra rule, **Shaivism** emerged as the main strand followed by people. Even the latter rulers also embraced it.



MEDIEVAL INDIA

1

Early Medieval Period



1.1 NORTH INDIA: RAJPUTANA PERIOD

- After the death of Harsha, there was **no political unity in north India** for about five centuries. The country was **split up into a number of states** which were constantly fighting and changing their frontiers.
- **Rajputas** emerged as a powerful force in North India and dominated the Indian political scene for about 500 years from the 7th century.

Tripartite Struggle

- The period from 750 - 1000 CE saw the rise of three important empires: **Gurjara-Pratihara** (Western India), **Palas** (Eastern India) and **Rashtrakutas** (Deccan).

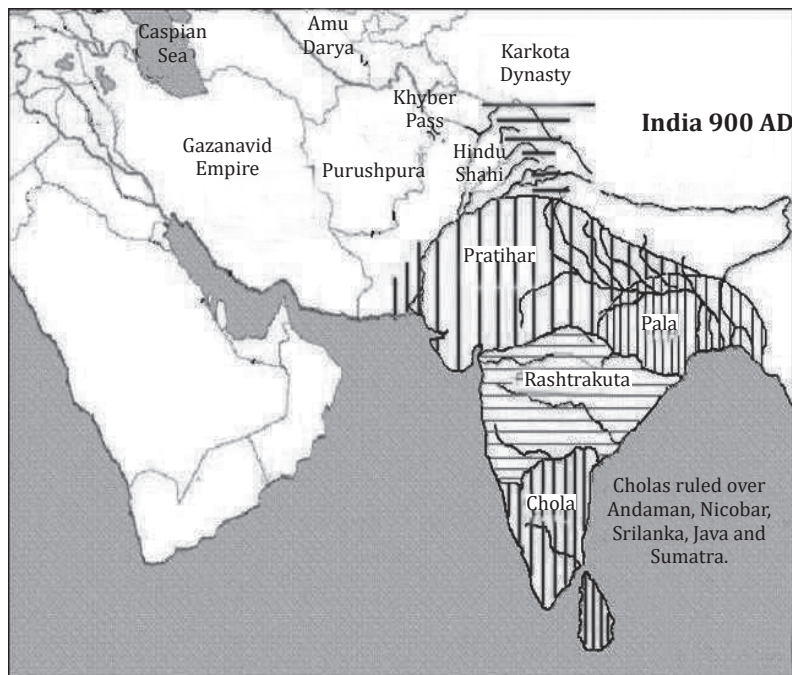


Fig. 1.1: Indian Subcontinent in 900 A.D.

- The conflict among these three powers (basically for control over Kannauj area of Ganga valley) is often described as a tripartite **struggle**.
- **Kannauj** was strategically and commercially very important. It was located on the **Ganga trade route** and was connected to the **Silk route**. Previously, **Kannauj was the capital of Harshavardhana Empire**.
- Out of these three, the **Rashtrakutas emerged as the most powerful** and their empire lasted for the most time.
- Rashtrakutas also **acted as the bridge between north and south India** in economic and cultural arenas.

The Four Agnikula Rajput Clans were

1. The Pratiharas
2. The Chahamanas/Chauhans of Ajmer.
3. The Chandellas of Bundelkhand.
4. The Paramaras of Malwa.

A. Gurjara-Pratihara Empire (Western India) (730-1036 AD)

- Known as Gurjara-Pratihara, as they originated from Gurjaras, who were primarily **pastoralists and fighters**.
- Dynasty was founded by **Harichandra**, in and around **Jodhpur, south western Rajasthan**.
- Pratihara were **instrumental in containing Arab armies** moving east of the Indus River.
- Gurjara-Pratihara are known for their **sculptures, carved panels and open pavilion style temples**.
- The greatest development of their style of temple building was at **Khajuraho - UNESCO World Heritage Site**.
- Sanskrit Poet & Dramatist **Rajasekhara** lived in the court of **Mahendrapala I** – son of Mihir Bhoja I.
- Finally in **11th century CE**, they were wiped off from the political map by the Ghaznavids and **their rule was succeeded by Chahamanas or Chauhans in Rajputana, Chalukyas or Solankis in Gujarat and the Paramaras or Pawars in Malwa**.
- Foreign traveller **Al-Masudi** had visited the **Pratihara empire**.

1. Important Rulers

Nagabhata I (730 - 760 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Most famous Pratiharas kings, known for containing Arab armies • Defeated by Rashtrakuta king Dhruva.
Vatsaraja (780 - 805 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Made Kannauj in western U.P as his capital. • Expansionist policy brought him into conflict with Dharmapala, the Pala king and Rashtrakuta king Dhruv, thus began "tripartite struggle" and continued for about another 350 years. • Vatsaraja defeated the Pala ruler Dharmapala and Dantidurga, the Rashtrakuta king, for control of Kannauj.
Nagabhata II (805 - 833 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He conquered Kannauj and the Indo-Gangetic Plain as far as Bihar from the Palas, and again checked the Muslims in the west. • He rebuilt the Shiva temple at Somnath in Gujarat, which had been demolished in an Arab raid from Sindh.
Bhoja I/ Mihira Bhoja (836 - 885 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Greatest ruler of Pratiharas, got victories over Palas and Rashtrakutas. • Proved to be the most successful and popular ruler of Pratiharas. • Capital at Kannauj, which is also known as Mahodaya. • Devotee of Vishnu and adopted the title of 'Adivaraha.' • He was called King Baura by another Arab traveller, Al-Masudi.
Mahendrapala I (885 - 910 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Under Bhoja and his successor Mahendrapala I, the Pratihara empire reached its peak of prosperity and power. • The Rashtrakuta king Krishna III invaded north India in about 963 CE and defeated the Pratihara ruler.

Rajyapala (960-1018 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Raid of Mahmud Ghazni on Kannauj; Rajyapala fled from the battlefield. ● Took the title Maharajadhiraja of Aryavarta (Great King of Kings of Northern India). His court was adorned by Rajashekhar, who was an eminent Sanskrit poet, dramatist and critic who wrote: Karpuramanjari, Kavya Mimansa, Vidya Salabhanjika, Bhrinjika, Bala Ramayana, Prapanch Pandav, Balabharathi, Bhushan Kosh.
Yashpal (1024-1036 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Last ruler of this dynasty ● By 1090 CE, the Gadhavalas conquered Kannauj.

Other Agnikula Rajput Clans	
Chandella	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● They ruled Bundelkhand region. ● Had two capital – Mahoba and Khajuraho ● Yashovarman made them an independent power. ● Ruled between the 9th and early 13th century. ● Weakened by invasions by Muslim dynasties.
Paramaras	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● They ruled over Malwa region, with Dhara as capital. ● The early rulers were vassals of Rashtrakutas. ● Siyaka captured Manyakheta, capital of Rashtrakutas. ● Paramara Bhoja: Important King of this dynasty, known as patron of arts, literature and sciences.
Solanki Dynasty	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ruled Gujarat for 300 years with the capital at Annihilwada. ● Bhima I, in his reign Mahmud of Ghazni in 1025 CE invaded Somnath temple. ● Kumarapala, in his court lived a popular Jain scholar Hemachandra. ● Bhima II, in the Year 1178, Muhammad Ghori invaded Gujarat.
Chauhan Dynasty	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ajmer, as their capital. ● Prithviraj Chauhan: He fought two battles at Tarain/ Staneshwar. ● In the first battle in 1191 he defeated Muhammad Ghori. ● In the second battle 1192 he was defeated and “Qutbuddin Aibak” was appointed as governor. ● Later Aibak established the Delhi Sultanate.
Socio-Religious	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● In India, Feudalism similar to western type is found in Rajput societies. ● Women immolated themselves on burning pyre- Johar. ● Female infanticide and early marriage of girls were practised. ● It failed to absorb foreign elements. ● Vaishnavism and Shaivism were patronised by the rulers. ● Buddhism declined and Jainism to some extent was present.
Literature	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● In the court of Mahendrapala I, Sanskrit Scholar Rajasekhara lived. ● He wrote Karpuramanjari, Kavyamimamsa, Bhuvankosha and Haravilasa. ● Paramara Bhoja wrote 24 Sanskrit Kavyas and took the title of Kaviraja. ● His books were: Ayurveda Sarvasya, Samarangana Sutradhara (on architecture), Champu-ramayana, Yukti kalpapatru (On statecraft). ● Bhoja built a Sanskrit college Bhojashala. ● Hemachandra, in the court of Kumarapala wrote Books: Kumarapalacharita, Naminatha, Parisistha Parvan, Abhidhamma Chintamani. ● He took the title Kalikala Sarvagna.

<p>Art and Architectue</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The fort structure reached perfection under the Rajputs. The palaces of Jaipur and Udaipur and the forts of Chittor, Mandu, Jodhpur and Gwalior are fine specimens of Rajputs architecture. • Dilwara temples at Mount Abu, the Vimla Vasahi and the Luna Vasahi were built by the Solankis of Gujarat. • Khajuraho temples were built by Chandellas rulers (UNESCO World Heritage site) • Dilwara Jain temples in Mt Abu built by Solanki rulers. • Rani ki Vav (UNESCO World Heritage site), a multi-storeyed well built by queen Udayamathi (wife of Bhima I). • The Rajputs paintings are divided into the Rajput School of Art and the Pahari School of Art. The Rajasthani School flourished in Mewar, Bikaner, Jaipur, Jodhpur and Jaisalmer and specialised in depicting scenes from Krishna Lila, Nayika Veda and Ritu Charita. • The Pahari School was patronised by the rulers of Himalayan states especially in the regions of Basoli, Mandi, Jammu, Kangra and Garhwal
-----------------------------------	--

2. Limitations of the Rajputs

- The **Rajput society** was **feudal** in its **organisational** set up. It was divided into **various clans** and **states**. Each state was ruled by **one or more hereditary ruling houses**.
- They **lacked political vision** and **foresight** and displayed **lack of national consciousness**. They preferred **personal freedom over political unity**.
- There was **no written law** for the land and most of the Rajputs ruled on the basis of local customs and tradition.
- All the above causes made it easy for the Muslim invaders and when they invaded India, the Indian society collapsed due to **internal weakness**.

3. Significance of Rajputs

- The **Rajputs** were the **main defenders** of the **Hindu religion** and culture from the **Muslim aggression**. The bravery and courage at the time of adversity of Rajputs had inspired the generation and is still inspiring.
- They were **great warriors** and laid down their lives for the honour of their family, clan and their regional leaders.
- The Rajput women **enjoyed considerable freedom** and **respect** in the society. They were known for their chastity and devotion to their husband. To save their honour, they committed **jauhar** with pride.

B. The Palas of Bengal (750-1150 AD)

- Around the 8th century CE, **Gopala** laid the foundation of Pala dynasty.
- As the names of all the succeeding kings ended with 'Pala' which meant **protector** in the ancient language of Prakrit, this dynasty came to be known as the '**Pala**' dynasty.
- **Capital: Muddagiri/ Munger (Bihar).**

- **Pala kingdom:** Bengal and Bihar, included the **major cities of Pataliputra, Vikramapura, Ramvati (Varendra), Monghyr (Munger), Tamralipti and Jaggadala**.
- Palas were followers of **Mahayana Buddhism and Tantric schools** of Buddhism.
- Pala had close **cultural relations with Tibet**. The noted Buddhist scholars, **Santarakshita** and **Dipankara** were invited to Tibet. They introduced a new form of religion there.
- They had close **trade contacts** and **cultural links** with **South-East Asia**.
- The Sailendra dynasty (Buddhist) which ruled over Malaya, Java, Sumatra sent many embassies to the Pala court.
- **Pala period** is considered as the **golden period in history of Bengal**.
- **Islam first appeared in Bengal during Pala rule**, as a result of increased trade between Bengal and the Middle East.
- Pala armies were famous for its **vast war elephant cavalry**.
- **Arab merchant Sulaiman** had visited the Pala kingdom.
- The Palas' power was destroyed by the Sena dynasty under Vijayasena.

C. The Rashtrakutas (Deccan) (752-973 AD)

- Rashtrakutas meaning **the chief of a rashtra**, they considered as the **feudatory of the Chalukyas**.
- **Capital: Manyakheta or Malkhed near Solapur.**
- They achieved spectacular military successes in the north and south and in the tripartite struggle they mostly defeated the Palas and the Pratiharas.
- Rashtrakuta **fought constantly against the eastern Chalukyas of Vengi and Pallavas of Kanchi and Pandya of Madurai**.

- **Krishna III was the last great ruler of Rashtrakutas.** In 972 CE, Capital city was burnt to ashes by the united opponents. This marks the end of Rashtrakutas.
- They were tolerant in their religious views and **patronised Shaivism, Vaishnavism and Jainism.**
- Rashtrakuta rule lasted in the Deccan for almost 200 years till the end of the 10th century.

Dantidurga (753-756 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Feudatory of the Chalukyan king, Kirtivarman II. ● Founded Rashtrakutas kingdom in 753 CE. ● Name 'Dantidurga' (meaning he whose elephant is his fortress) also signifies his military feats and accomplishments.
Krishna I (756-774 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The empire included present day Karnataka and Konkan under his control. ● The rock-cut Kailasanath (Shiva) temple (monolithic, dedicated to Lord Shiva) at Ellora caves was built during his reign.
Dhruva (DA 397-087)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● He led successful expeditions to Kannauj, defeated the Nagabhata II (Pratiharas) and Dharmapala (Pala).
Amoghavarsha I (814-878 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Called as "Ashoka of the South" and also compared to Gupta king Vikramaditya. ● Built a new capital city at Manyakheta (Modern Malkhed). ● Assumed the title "Veeranarayana". ● Defeated Eastern Chalukyas, maintained friendly relations with neighbours. ● He wrote Kavirajamarga (Kannada) and the Prasnottara Ratna Malika (Sanskrit). ● He was a follower of Jainism. ● Wrote the Kavirajamarga – the earliest Kannada work on poetics and the Prasnottara Ratna Malika in Sanskrit, which is considered as a writing of high merit. ● After his death, all his opponents united against his successor and in 972 CE sacked the Rashtrakuta capital Malkhed and burnt it to ashes. This marks the end of the Rashtrakutas.
Administration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The system of administration in all three dynasties was based upon the ideas and practices of the Gupta empire. ● King was head of administration and commander in chief of the armed forces. He also dispensed justice. ● The king was assisted by a number of ministers, generally from leading families and their position was hereditary. ● Directly administered territories were divided into: Rashtra (province) and Visaya (Districts) and Bhukti. ● The head of Rashtra was Rashtrapati, and had similar functions as the Upaika performed in Pala and Pratihara. ● Village was the smallest unit. The village headman carried out duties with the help of Gramas- Mahajana or Grama-Mahattara (village elders). ● Villages also had committees to manage schools, tanks, temples etc. ● Law and order in the towns and in areas in their vicinity was the responsibility of Kosthapal or Kotwal. ● Nad-Gavundas or Desa-Gramakutas were the hereditary revenue officers.
Socio-Religious	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Society was divided into various castes and based on profession. ● Guilds occupied an important position in society. ● They were tolerant to various faiths. ● Amoghavarsha endorsed Jainism.

Literature	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Patronised Sanskrit and popularised Kannada. Amoghavarsha, took a title "Kaviraja" and wrote two books: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Kavirajamarga: grammar, first book written in Kannada. Ratnaloka: Sanskrit book written on Jainism. He patronised Sanskrit Jain scholars: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Jinasena: wrote Parsvabhudya and Adipurana which are on Adinatha. Mahaviracharya: wrote Ganita sara sangraha, a book on mathematics. Shaktayana wrote Amogavrithi, a grammar book in Sanskrit. Halayudha wrote Kavirahasya Viracharya wrote Ganitasaram Trivikrama Bhatta wrote Nalachampu Pampa wrote Vikramasenavijaya Ponna wrote Santipurana.
Art and Architecture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Instrumental in establishing Karnata Dravida style. Rock cut cave Kailasa temple in Ellora. Caves at Ellora and Elephanta. Kashi Vishvanatha temple and the Jain Narayana temple at Pattadakal in modern Karnataka - both are UNESCO World Heritage Sites. The great Apbhramsha poet Svayambhu and his son lived in Rashtrakuta court.

1.2 SOUTH INDIA

A. The Cholas (850-1279 AD)

- Known as **Imperial Cholas of Tanjore**.
- The **founder** of Chola dynasty was **Vijayalaya** who was at **first a feudatory of Pallavas**.
- The **greatest kings of Cholas** were **Rajaraja** & his son **Rajendra I**.
- The use of **Agrahatta (Persian wheel)** also facilitated the already established smooth irrigation networks of tanks, canals, wells and sluices.
- Important Rulers:**

Rajaraja I (985- 1014 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Greatest Chola Ruler, who helped raise chola empire as largest dominion in South India. He took titles – Mummidi Chola, Jayankonda & Shivpadshekhara. He defeated Chera, Pandya & conquered Maldives Islands. Naval expedition against the Sailendra Empire (Malaya Peninsula). Expanded trade with china. In 1010 CE, constructed the Rajarajeshwara or Brihadeeswara temple, dedicated to shiva at Thanjavur. Rajarajeshwara or Brihadeeswara temple is a part of "Greatest Living Chola Temples", & entered the UNESCO World Heritage site list in 1987. This temple is the finest example of Dravidian architecture. Developed a revenue system where land was surveyed and then revenue was assessed. So, he was referred to as Ulakalanada Perumal (the great who measured the earth).
Rajendra I (1014- 1044 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Son of Rajaraja I, defeated & conquered whole Sri Lanka. Made the Chola navy the strongest in the area and 'Bay of Bengal' was converted into a 'Chola Lake'. He assumed the title of "Gangaikondachola" & built a city-"Gangaikondacholapuram". He was a great patron of learning and known as Pandita - chola. Encouraged local self-government.
Rajadhi Raja I (1044 - 1052 A.D)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He earned the title "Jayamkonda chola". He captured Kalyani, western chalukya capital and took the title Kalyanpur Makonda.

Rajendra III	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Rajendra III was the last king. Later ,Pandyas conquered the Chola Empire. ● Chola Empire was founded by Vijayalaya, feudatory of Pallavas. ● Vijayalaya captured Tanjore in 850 A.D.
Administration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● King was the central power and assisted by a council of ministers. ● The Chola empire had a strong standing army. ● The empire was divided into mandalams (provinces), valanadu (districts). ● The officials were generally given revenue bearing lands. ● Cholas were known for village administration (Uttaramerur inscriptions of Paranthaka provides for this) ● Two assemblies - Ur, Sabha or Mahasabha. ● Ur was a general assembly of the village. ● Mahasabha was a gathering of adult men in Brahmana villages (agraharas) ● Election system was present.
Economy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Built a network of roads. ● Expansions in agrarian economy, use of Agrahatta (Persian wheel) for smooth irrigation. ● Tanks for irrigation purposes were built. ● Elaborate survey of land is done to assess the govt. share. ● Revenue sources: land tax, tolls on trade, taxes, professions etc, plunder.
Society	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● It was organised based on the Varnasrama model. ● Sub castes were proliferated – Kaikalla, Chetti, Cheek etc. ● Division of sub castes into Valangai and Idangai. ● The Devadasi system was prevalent in the society. ● Emergence of trading caste: Garveras (Northern merchants migrated southwards), Gaudas/ Gavundas (originally cultivators).
Religion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Chola kings were Shaivites. ● Paranthaka I Chola covered shiva temple with gold at Chidambaram. ● Rajendra I constructed shiva temple in Ceylon. ● They were tolerant towards other religions. ● Vaishnavism also flourished during the period. ● Saint Ramanujan was a contemporary of chola kings. ● Temples acted as important centres of cultural life.
Art and Architecte	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Build great capitals: Tanjore, Gangaikondacholapuram, Kanchi etc. ● Chola kings built lofty temples & inscribed long inscriptions on the wall narrating their achievements. They also depict the socio-economic conditions of that period. ● The Dravidian type of temple architecture reached its climax under the Cholas. ● Dravidian temple architecture: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Garbhagriha – multiple stories in the chief-deity room. ○ These stories varied from 5 to 7 and are known as Vimana. ○ Mandapa with a pillared hall. ○ Pillars are elaborately curved. ○ Courtyards surrounding the structure. ○ Gopurams- lofty gateways ● Examples: Kailasanath Temple of Kanchipuram was built in the 8th century. Brihadeshwara temple (Tanjore), Airavatesvara temple & temple at Gangaikondacholapuram, Nataraja temple at Chidambaram are famous. ● Brihadeshwara temple at Tanjore was built by Rajaraja which was dedicated to Shiva. ● The Chola period is also remarkable for its sculptures and bronzes. The best example of this can be seen in Dancing figure of Nataraja. ● Bharatanatyam & kathakali are two types of dances performed during the Chola period.

Literature	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Sivakasintamani written by Thiruthakkadevar and Kundalakesi belongs to the 10th century. ● The Ramayana composed by Kamban and the Periyapuranam or Thiruthondar Puranam by Sekkilar are the two master-pieces of this age. ● The Telugu version of Mahabharata was started by Nanniah & completed by Tikkana. ● Jayankondar's Kalingattupparani describes the Kalinga war fought by Kulottunga I. ● Moovarula written by Ottakuthar depicts the life of three Chola kings. ● Nalavenba was written by Pugalendi. ● The works on Tamil grammar like Kalladam by Kalladanar, Yapperungalamby Amirthasagarar, a Jain, Nannul by Pavanandhi and Virasoliyam by Buddhamitra were written during Chola rule. ● Pampa, Ponna, & Ranna are considered 3 gems of Kannada literature lived in the 10th century.
Important Terms & Meaning	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Kaikkolaperumpadai – Royal troops ● Velaikkarar – Personal troops to defend kings ● Kadagram - military cantonment ● Puravuvanithinaikkalam – Revenue dept. ● Peruvazhis – Trunk roads

B. Western Chalukyas - Kalyani (973-1200 AD)

- Ruled from **Kalyani** (973- 1200 A.D).
- Followed the traditions of Rashtrakutas and Vatapi Chalukyas.
- **Ruled Karnataka region and surrounding areas.**

Famous Rulers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Tailapa II (973-97 A.D) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Feudatory of Rashtrakutas, Defeated Krishna III. 2. Credited with victories over Chedi, Orissa, Nepal and Kuntala. ● Somesvara I (1042-68 A.D) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Took the titles: Ahava Malla and Trailokyamalla. 2. He built the city of Kalyan. 3. Bilhana's Vikramankadevacharita deals with Somesvara I. ● Last ruler Tailapa III was defeated by Kalachuris.
Administration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Hereditary Monarchical form of government. ● Used titles Samasthabhuvanasraya and Vijayaditya. ● Their insignia was a boar signifying varahavatara. ● Limited number of council of ministers to advise the King. ● Ministers post was hereditary. ● Administration had feudal elements. ● Territory was divided into Rashtra, Vtshaya, Nadu, Kampana and Thana. ● Vishayapatis, Gramakutakas, Ayuktakas and Niyakutakas were the officials
Economy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Agriculture and trade & commerce were backbones of the economy. ● State provided irrigational facilities. ● Cultivated land was categorised into Dry land, wet land and Garden land. ● Private ownership along with joint ownership of land existed. ● Guilds were active and had autonomy.

Society	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Social life was based on the Varnasrama model. • Caste was universal and hereditary. • The Relationship between caste and occupation was less rigid. • Women of higher status played a major role in social and administrative life. • Akkamahadevi, a chalukyan princess also led the armies in battle.
Religion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Shaivism and Vaishnavism were patronised. • Shakti was worshipped as Kollapura Mahalakshmi. • Karthikeya was worshipped – Kudidatani in Bellary. • Basavesvara's Veerashaivism was also very popular. • Jainism was also practised and received royal patronage too.
Art and Architecture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Their temple architecture is known as "Karnata Dravida". • It is an extension of Badami chalukyan style. • Temples of Ittagi were the finest examples of Art and architecture. • Ornamentation on the outer walls of the shrine and presence of figure sculptures of heroes and loving couples (Mithuna) were unique features of Kalyani Chalukyas.

C. Eastern Chalukyas of Vengi

- This dynasty was founded by **Pulakeshin II's** brother **Vishnuvardhana** and they established themselves at **Vengi** in Andhra Pradesh, but later **shifted their capital to Rajamahendravarman** (modern **Rajahmundry**).
- **Vijayaditya III** (848-892 AD) was credited with **victories over the Pallavas, the Pandyas and the Rashtrakutas**. Their power was weakened in the 10th century AD and they became the allies of the Cholas. **Kulothunga Chola** annexed this kingdom in 1076 AD.

D. The Western Gangas

- The Western Ganga dynasty ruled from the **11th to the early 15th centuries AD** in **Orissa**. Their capital was **Kalinganagara**. This dynasty was founded by **Anantavarman Chodaganga** (1076-1150 AD) who assumed the title of **Trikalingadhipati** in 1076 AD. He was credited for building **Jagannath temple** at **Puri** in Orissa.
- **Narsimhadeva** (1238-1264 AD) was another famous ruler of this dynasty, who was credited for building the **Sun temple** at **Konark**. This dynasty came to an end during the reign of **Bhanudeva IV** (1414-1434 AD) and later it was succeeded by **Chalukyas of Vengi**.

Do you know?

- **The Sailendra dynasty** (Malaya, Java and Sumatra), which was Buddhist in faith, sent many embassies to the Pala court and sought permission to build a monastery at **Nalanda University**.
- The **Palas** has close trade contacts with **South-East Asia** and **Tibet**.

1.3 ARAB INVASION (711 AD)

- **Al-Hajjaj Ibn Yusuf** (**Arab governor**) sent two military expeditions against **Dahar** (ruler of Sindh) under the pretext of acting against the pirates. But both expeditions failed. Then, Hajjaj again sent a full-fledged army with 6,000 strong cavalry and a large camel corps after taking the permission from the Caliph under the command of **Muhammad Bin Qasim** (his son-in-law).
- He arrived at the coast of Sindh in 712 AD and marched towards the **Brahamanabad fortress** where Dahar was stationed but Qasim was betrayed by his Wazir. But due to lack of popular support for Dahar, Qasim ravaged Debal

(near Karachi) for 3 days. He called on the people of Sindh to surrender and promised them the full protection of their faith.

- The source of this invasion was **Chachnama** (13th century Persian translation which described the history of Qasim)
- **Reasons for failure of Arabs to build a permanent empire in India:**
 1. Imprisonment of **Muhammad bin Qasim** by the new Khalifa.
 2. **New Khalifa's indifferent** attitude towards desert Sindh province.
 3. **Diversion of Arab attention** due to the fight over the Caliphate.
 4. **Bravery and heroism** of Indian rulers.

1.4 TURK INVASION

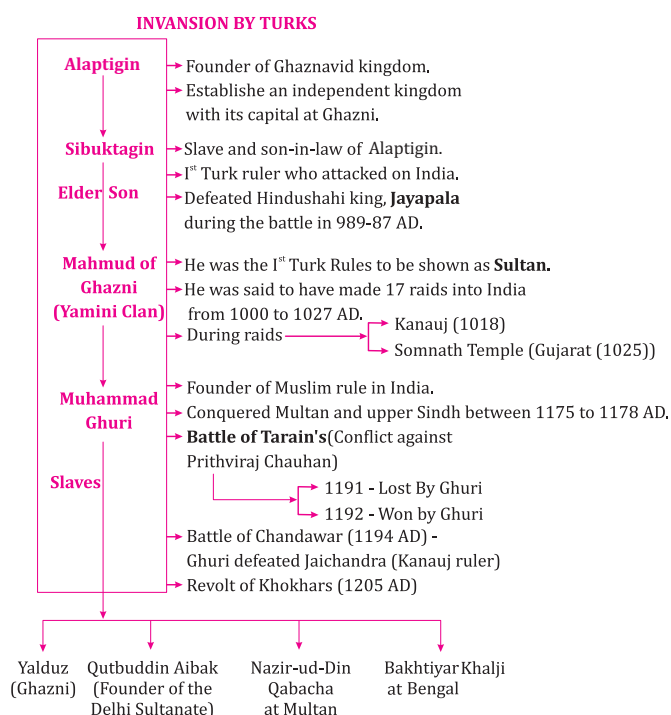


Fig. 1.2: Chronology of Turk Invasions

- The **Kingdom of Ghazni** was **founded** (962 AD) by **Alaptigin** (slave of the Samanid amirs of Bukhara). He served as the **governor of Khorasan** and seized Ghazni city. However, he died soon after.
- **Reasons for the Success of Turks in India:**
 1. Rajputs lacked unity and organisation and were divided by rivalries.

2. Absence of a Centralised government/administration.
3. The Rajput Kingdoms were small and scattered.
4. The Turks were better organised and took advantage of the lack of mutual cooperation among the Rajputs

1.5 MAHMUD OF GHAZNI

- He was considered as a **hero of the Islamic people** by mediaeval Muslim historians due to his **stout defence against the Central Asian Turkish tribal invaders**.

A. Reasons behind the raids of Mahmud of Ghazni

1. To accumulate a vast amount of wealth.
2. To spread Islam and thus, he was also known as Shikan or destroyer of the images.
3. Due to political instability in India, he did not want to give time to the princes in India to regroup and combine forces against him.

B. Aftermath of Mahmud of Ghazni

- Two distinct patterns of interaction between Hindus and Muslims emerged.
 - (i) **One** was the lure for plunder which resulted in raids into Gangetic valley and on Rajputana by the successors of Mahmud.
 - (ii) **Second**, Muslim traders strengthened India's trade with the Central Asian countries. **Lahore emerged as a centre of Arabic and Persian language.**
- Muslim religious preachers known as the **sufis** emerged during this period who preached the message of humanity and love to all and they were widely supported by both Hindus and Muslims.
- The **Seljuk Turks**, a powerful **mediaeval Turko-Persians emerged** and controlled a vast area of Syria, Iran and **Trans-Oxiana** and this empire fought with Ghaznavids for the control of **Khorasan**.
- **Masud** (son of Mahmud of Ghazni) was defeated by the Seljuks and fled to Lahore for refuge and their empire was shrunk to Ghazni and Punjab only.
- After the Seljuks, two new powers rose to prominence: **the Khwarizmi empire** based in Iran and **the Ghurid empire** based in Ghur in north-west Afghanistan.

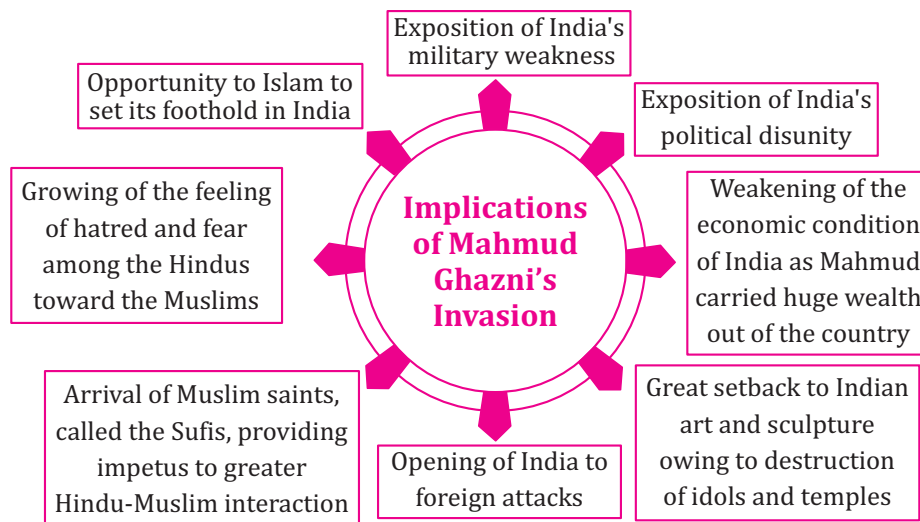


Fig. 1.3: Ghazni's Invasion and its Implications

1.6 THE GHURID DYNASTY

- The **Ghurids started as vassals of Ghazni** but had soon freed themselves. The power of the Ghurids increased under **Sultan Alauddin** who earned the title of **jahan- soz** (world burner) because during the **middle of the 12th century**, he ravaged Ghazni and burnt it to ground in revenge for the treatment that had been meted out to his brothers at Ghazni.
- The imperialistic ambitions of Ghurids brought them in conflict with **Khwarizmi empire**, with Muizzuddin facing a disastrous defeat in 1203 AD, compelling them to divert their attention towards India.

A. Muhammad Ghuri (1173-1206 AD)

- **Muhammad Ghuri or Muizzuddin Muhammad bin Sam ascended the throne** at Ghazni in **1173 AD** while his elder brother was ruling at Ghur.
- Ghuri conquered Multan (1175 AD) and Uchch (in upper Sindh) from the Bhatti Rajputs and established a fort there.
- In **1178 AD**, he attacked Gujarat but Ghuri was completely routed back in the **Battle of Kayadara** (1178 AD) near **Mount Abu** by Solanki ruler **Bhima II**.
- **Muhammad Ghuri** (Ghuri prince) invaded Punjab and seized Lahore in 1186 AD. **Khurav Shah** (last ruler of Ghaznavid empire) was murdered in 1192 AD. **With his death the Ghaznavid house of Mahmud came to an end.**
- By 1190, he had conquered **Peshawar, Lahore and Sialkot** and was poised for a thrust towards Delhi and the Gangetic doab.
- In **1191 AD**, to conquer the whole of India, **Ghuri marched towards Delhi** and **captured Sirhind**. **Prithviraja Chauhan** put up a brave fight with his soldiers against Ghuri in **Tarain**.

- In this first battle of Tarain, Ghuri was badly injured and defeated. In 1192 AD, Ghuri defeated Prithviraj. The ruler of Delhi was ousted and Delhi was made a base for further Turkish advances into the Ganga valley.

First Battle of Tarain (1191 A.D.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He seized the fortress of Bhatinda in 1189 A.D. and then progressed into the kingdom of Prithviraj Chauhan. Muhammad of Ghori was defeated by Prithviraj in the First Battle of Tarain in 1191 A.D. and recovered Bhatinda.
Second Battle of Tarain (1192 A.D.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In the second battle of Tarain, the joined forces of the Rajput rulers under Prithviraj were defeated by Muhammad of Ghori. Prithviraj was held as a prisoner and later put to death. The Turkish rule began for the first time in Indian history with the end of The Second Battle of Tarain. Qutb-ud-din Aibak was appointed as the commander by Muhammad of Ghori.

1. Battle of Chandawar (1194 AD)

- After Tarain, Ghuri returned to Ghazni leaving the conquered territories under his trusted slave **Qutbuddin Aibak**.
- During the next two years, Turks overran parts of upper doab without any opposition from Gahadavalas. In **1194 AD**, Ghuri returned to India again and attacked Kanauj defeating Jaichandra, in the **Battle of Chandawar (near Kannauj)**.

- After this invasion, **Qutbuddin Aibak** was made the viceroy by Ghuri.
- Two successive **battles of Tarain** and **battle of Chandawar** laid the **foundation of Turkish** rule in north India.
- Then Ghuri moved to Banaras and destroyed many temples there. He also captured the forts of Bayana and Gwalior, which guarded the southern flank of Delhi.
- **Aibak** conquered Kalinjar, Mahoba and Khajuraho from the Chandella rulers of the area.

2. Conquests of Gujarat, Bundelkhand, Bengal and Bihar (1195 - 1202 AD)

- **Qutbuddin Aibak** was **defeated by Bhima II (Solanki king)**. But later Aibak defeated Bhima II, plundering and ravaging a number of towns.

- His next target was **Bundelkhand** which was ruled by the **Chandella Rajputs**. He defeated them and conquered Bundelkhand.
- During this time, **Muhammad Bakhtiyar Khalji**, another general of Muhammad Ghuri, attacked Bihar in 1197 AD and Bengal in 1202 AD. He destroyed the universities of **Nalanda** and **Vikramsila**. Khalji was appointed the governor of Bengal and Bihar.

3. Revolt of Khokhars (1205 AD)

- In 1205 AD, **Ghuri** again came to India and this time the
- In 1206 AD, when **Ghuri** was returning to Ghazni, he was killed by Khokhars in **Dhamyak district** near **Jhelum** river (now in Pakistan).

1.7 IMPORTANT FOREIGN TRAVELLERS/ENVOYS

Important Foreign Travellers/Envoys	
Al-Masudi (957 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Arab traveller, referred as 'Herodotus of the Arabs'.
Al-Beruni (1024-1030 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • His real name was Abu Rehan Mahmud who came along with Mahmud of Ghazni and wrote Kitab al Hind and Tahqiq-i-Hind. • He came to India along with Mahmud of Ghazni. He was the inter-civilizational connect between India and the rest of the world because : • He translated the Greek work of Euclid into Sanskrit. • He transmitted Aryabattiyam (by Aryabhatta) to the west.
Firdausi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Persian Poet, known as Homer of the East wrote Shahnama.
Ibn Battuta (1333-1347 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He was the Morocco traveller.
Nicolò-de-Conti (1420-1421 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He was the Venetian traveller who gave an account of Vijayanagar kingdom.
Abdur Razzaq (1443-1444 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A Persian traveller who stayed in the court of the Zamorin at Calicut. His account dealt with the Vijayanagar kingdom, especially of the city.
Domingos Paes (1520-1522 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A Portuguese traveller who visited the court of Krishnadeva Raya of the Vijayanagar kingdom.
Minhaj-us- Siraj Juzjani	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He traced his genealogy back to the royal house of Ghazni.
Ziauddin Barani	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • His account Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi dealt from the reign of Balban to the 6th year of the reign of Firuz Shah Tughlaq. • His other major work, the Fatwa-i- Jahandari, translated as the Principles of Government is depicted in the form of a series of lectures on state- craft delivered by Mahmud of Ghazni.
Abdal Malik Isami	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • His account Futuh-us-Salatin was composed under the patronage of Bahman Shah (founder of the Bahmani kingdom).
Shams-i-Siraj Afif	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • His account Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi is supposed to be continuation of Barani's which gives a detail account of the reign of Sultan Firuz Shah Tughlaq before it was given a death blow by the armies of Timur
Yahya bin Ahmad Sirhindi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • His account Tarikh-i-Mubarak Shahi dealt with the reign of Firuz Shah Tughlaq (1388-1434 AD).
Ferishta	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A Persian historian who wrote Tarikh-i-Ferishta

1.8 BIHAR SPECIAL: EARLY MEDIEVAL HISTORY OF BIHAR

Bihar During Pala Period

- After the disintegration of Harsha's empire, the Pala dynasty emerged in eastern India in the middle of the eighth century AD.
- The Pala dynasty was founded by Gopal in 750 AD. Gopal soon expanded his rule in Bihar.
- Becoming the king Gopal is called Matsya Nyaya. This means that in order to get rid of the internal disorder that had spread in Bengal after Shashank's death, Gopal was made to accept Lakshmi's arm.
- Munger was the capital of the Pala dynasty.
- Gopal had established Odantapuri University (present day Bihar Sharif).
- After Gopal, his son Dharmapala became the king who ruled from 770 AD to 810 AD.
- The 11th century Gujarati poet Sodhdhal calls Dharmapala Uttarapatha Swami. Dharmapala attacked Kannauj in the last quarter of the eighth century. He organised a grand court by appointing Cakrayudha as the ruler of Kannauj and assumed the title of Uttarapatha Swamin.
- The tripartite struggle for Kannauj started during the time of Dharmapala. Dharmapala was the first ruler who participated in the tripartite struggle.
- Dharmapala established the Vikramshila University (in present-day Bhagalpur). Along with this, he donated 200 grams to Nalanda Mahavihara.
- The Buddhist writer Haribhadra used to reside in the court of Dharmapala.
- After Dharmapala, his son became Devpal who ruled from 810 AD to 850 AD.
- Devapala was the most powerful ruler of the Pala dynasty.
- Devpal also adopted expansionist policy like his father. He expanded his power in Pragjyotishpur in the northeast, Nepal in the north and Orissa on the eastern coast. He also participated in the struggle of Kannauj. According to some historians, he also fought with the states of the Deccan. During his time there were also friendly relations with South-East Asia. He granted five villages for the maintenance of a monastery at Nalanda at the request of Balaputradeva, the ruler of Java. He is famous as the patron of Buddhism.
- Devpal had made Munger the capital of Pal dynasty.

- The decline of the Pala dynasty began after the death of Devpal. During the reign of Mihirbhoj and Mahendrapala, the Pratiharas captured most of eastern Uttar Pradesh and Bihar.
- The Pala dynasty was revived under Mahipala in the eleventh century. He captured the entire Bengal and Magadha regions.
- Mahipala is considered the second founder of the Pala dynasty. He ruled from 988 AD to 1038 AD.
- Rajendra Chola invaded Bengal during the reign of Mahipala I, in which Mahipala was defeated.
- Rampal is considered to be the last worthy king of the Pal dynasty. Sandhyakar Nandi lived in Rampal's court who composed Rampalcharit.
- Mahipala's successors were weak. Taking advantage of this, the Kaivartas became powerful in Bengal and the Sena rulers, Vijayasena and Ballasena established their kingdom in northern Bihar and some areas of Bengal. After this the power of the Palas was limited to some parts of Magadha.
- After the death of Rampal, the Gahadavalas also expanded to Shahabad and Gaya in Bihar. In the Manner Tamra Patra of Govind Chandra, the ruler of the Gahadwal dynasty, there is a mention of a tax named Turushkdand. This tax was collected from the farmers of this region and from this the means were obtained to stop the attacks of the Turks.
- In this atmosphere of anarchy, the invasions of the Turks started in Bihar by the end of the twelfth century.
- The Pala rulers were Buddhist. They patronized Buddhist educational institutions.
- The Palas had close relations with Tibet.
- Among the Buddhist scholars, Shantarakshita and Atisha Dipankara went to Tibet during this period.
- Even after the campaigns of Bakhtiyar Khilji, a Buddhist monk (Dharmaswamin) came to Bihar from Tibet to get education in Nalanda Mahavihara.
- The Pala rulers developed the literary school called Gaudiriti.
- The last Pala ruler was Madanapala.
- The Pala rulers also gave special encouragement to sculpture.
- Beautiful images of Gautama Buddha and Hindu deities were made in shiny black stone.
- The Pala era was the best in the making of bronze images.

Karnata dynasty of North Bihar

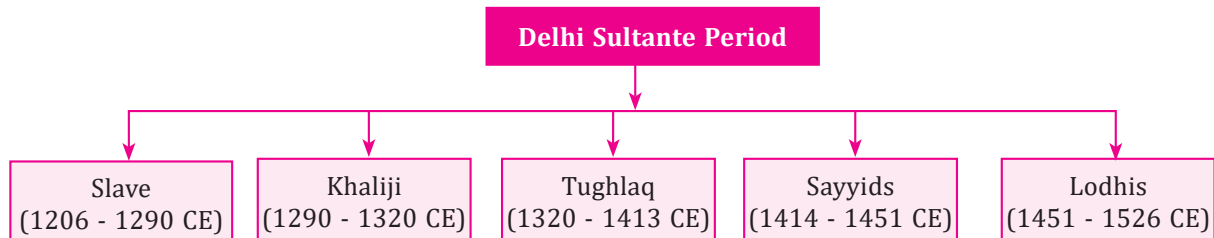
- At the time when the background of Turkish military campaigns was being created in Bihar, political instability prevailed in this region. By the end of the eleventh century, the power of the Palas declined in Bihar.
- **In 1097-98, during the reign of Pala dynasty Rampal, the state of Karnata emerged in the Tirhut region of northern Bihar.**
- **Nanyadev was the founder of Karnata state.**
- **The capital of the Karnata dynasty was Simraongarh, which is located in the northeastern region of Terai of present-day Nepal.**
- Gangdev became the king after Nanyadev. He is known in history as an able administrator.
- The ruler of the Karnata dynasty, Narasimhadeva allied with the Turks. The root cause of this was his constant conflict with the Sena rulers of Bengal.
- Narasimhadeva had areas like Tirhut and Darbhanga under his control.
- When Bakhtiyar Khilji's campaigns took place in the region of Bihar, Narasimhadeva satisfied him by giving tribute or tribute. But later this cooperative relationship stopped and in the thirteenth century continuous military campaigns were carried out on the Tirhut region by the Turkish governors of Bihar.

- The contemporary Tibetan traveller, Dharmaswamin, mentions the unsuccessful campaign of the Turk general Tughril Tugan on the Tirhut region under the rule of Ramsinghadeva.
- The contact of the Sultans of Delhi with the Carnatic rulers was continuous. Generally, the governors of the Delhi Sultanate, who were appointed in the region of Bihar and Bengal, used to receive tribute from the Carnatic rulers.
- **During the Bengal campaign of Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq, in 1324-25, the complete suzerainty of the Sultanate was established over the Tirhut region. At that time the ruler of Tirhut was Harisinghdev. He could not face the attack of the Turkish army and fled to the Terai of Nepal.**
- Thus the territories of northern and central Bihar were merged with the Delhi Sultanate.
- **By 1378 AD, the Karnata dynasty came to an end completely.**
- The Karnata dynasty ruler Harisinghdev remained active as a great social reformer. He ruled from 1279 AD to 1335 AD.
- During this time registry -management was developed. As a result, a new class of registrars was formed.
- Smriti and essay-related compositions were also written in large numbers in this period and the form of Maithil society which has remained till the present time, its characteristics could take a mature form in this period.



2

The Delhi Sultanate



2.1 INTRODUCTION

- The period between **1206 A.D. and 1526 A.D.** in India's history is known as the **Delhi Sultanate period**.
- During this period of over three hundred years, **five dynasties ruled in Delhi**.

2.2 SLAVE DYNASTY (1206 - 1290 CE)

- **Qutub-ud-din Aibak founded the Slave dynasty.** It is also known as **Mamluk** (Arabic word meaning 'owned') Dynasty.
- Aibak is considered as the **real founder** of Muslim rule in India.

A. Qutub-ud-din Aibak: (1206 -1210)

- Founded **First independent Turkish Kingdom** in India & assumed the title **Sultan**.
- Qutbi dynasty founded by Qutbuddin Aibak.
- He was a **Turkish slave** of **Muhammad Ghori**.
- He became **independent after Ghuri's death** and began his rule in 1206 A.D.
- He made **Lahore as his capital**.
- He is Known as **Lakh Baksh** or **giver of lakhs** as he **gave a lot of liberal donations**.
- Aibak issued **coins in gold, silver, billon and copper**. He discarded carving the name of Abbasid caliph on it.
- **Art and Architecture:**
 - **Aibak constructed 2 Mosques:**
 1. Quwwat-ul-Islam (Delhi).
 2. Adhai din ka Jhonpra (Ajmer)
 - Started construction of the **Qutub Minar** (only the first storey) dedicated to Sufi Saint, **Khwaja Qutubuddin Bakhtiyar Kaki**, later completed by Iltutmish.
 - He patronised **Fakhar-ud-Din**, author of Tarikh-i-Mubarak Shahi & **Hasan Nizami** who wrote **Tajul-Masir**, the **first official history** of the Delhi Sultanate.

B. Aram Shah: (1210 AD)

- Considered the most incapable ruler.
- Thus **Iltutmish** (son-in-law of Aibak) was invited to Delhi. He then **deposed Aram Shah** and became Sultan.

C. Shamsuddin Iltutmish: (1210 -1236 AD)

- **Iltutmish defeated Quabacha**, who had declared himself independent ruler of Multan & seized Lahore & parts of Punjab.
- **Introduced Arabic coinage** into India. **Silver tanka** became a standard coin in mediaeval India. Also issued **Copper jital**.
- He **Shifted capital from Lahore to Delhi**.
- **Father of tomb building** (Sultan Garhi in Delhi); completed the construction of the **Qutub Minar** at Delhi, the tallest stone tower in India (238 ft.).
- Patronised **Minas-us Siraj (writer)** author of **Minhaj-us- siraj**.
- He nominated **Raziya** as his successor. Thus, he **initiated hereditary succession** to Delhi Sultanate.

D. Razia Sultan

- **1st and only female Muslim ruler** of mediaeval India.
- **Discarded female apparel and purdah**, adopted male attire, went hunting which aroused resentment among Turkish nobles.
- Raziya, while returning back to Delhi was killed on the way.
- **In 1246, Bulban succeeded in putting Nasiruddin Mahmud**, a younger son of Iltutmish as Sultan & served as his Naib (next powerful post to Sultan).
- **In 1266, Nasiruddin Mahmud died & Balban became Sultan.**

E. Balban

- Also known as **Ulugh khan** was one of the main architects of the Delhi Sultanate.
- Second Ilbari dynasty founded by Balban.**
- According to him, the Sultan was **God's shadow on earth (Zil-i-Ilahi)** and recipient of **divine grace (Nibyabat-i- Khudai)**.
- Balban introduced **rigorous court discipline** and new customs such as **sijada (prostration)** and **paibos (kissing the Sultan's feet)**.
- Instead of expanding his kingdom, Balban **paid more attention to the restoration of law and order.**
- He broke the **power of the Forty(Chahalgani system).**
- Introducing the **Persian festival Nawrouz.**
- Called himself **Nasir-amir-ul-momin** (Caliph's right-hand man).

Administration of Balban

- Separated **Diwan-i-wizarat** (Finance Department) from the **Diwan-i-Arz** (Military Department).
- Administered **justice with extreme impartiality.**
- He followed the **policy of blood & iron.**
- Excluded non-Turks** from administration.
- Indian Muslims not given important posts.
- Appointed spies** to monitor the activities of the nobles.
- Introduced sijda** (prostration) and **paibos** (kissing the Sultan's feet) to prove his superiority over the nobles.

2.3 KHALJI DYNASTY (1290-1320 AD)

- Khilji nobles** headed by Jalaldduin, **overthrew the incompetent successors** of Balban in 1290 & Est. Khilji dynasty.
- This event is called the **Dynastic Revolution of 1290-** it brought to an end the so-called slave dynasty and brought to the forefront the Khaljis.

A. Jalauddin Khalji (1290-1296 AD)

- 1st sultan of Delhi Sultanate to have a benevolent attitude towards Hindus.**

- He stated, **State should be based on the willing support of the governed** and as the majority of the population was Hindu, state cannot become truly Islamic.
- Adopted the **policy of tolerance** and **tried to win goodwill** of the nobility.
- Was murdered by his son-in-law Alauddin Khalji in 1296 and usurped the throne.

B. Alauddin Khalji (1296-1316 AD)

- Appointed as **Amir-i-Tuzuk** (Master of Ceremonies) and **Ariz-i-Mumalik** (Minister of Law) by **Jalauddin Khalji.**
- Jalauddin's **policy of tolerance was reversed by Alauddin Khalji;** awarded harsh punishment for opposing him.
- He decided to revive Balban's policies of **ruthless governance.**
- To keep hold on nobles – He **prohibited holding festivals, marriage without permission of him, banned wines & intoxicants** to avoid social gathering, **reorganised spy services (Barids).**
- He was the **first sultan who separated religion from politics.** He proclaimed **Kingship knows no kinship.**
- Barani** wrote the book: **Tarikh-i-Firuz Shahi.**
- Patronised poets like **Amir Khusrau** and **Mir Hasan Dehli.**
- Though Alauddin was illiterate, he adopted the title of **Sikander-i-Azam** and **gave Amir Khusrau the title of Tuti- i-Hind (Parrot of India).**
- He **defeated Mongols** in the battles of Jalandhar (1298), Kili (1299), Amroha (1305) and Ravi (1306).
- Malik Kafur was his slave general.** He led a series of expeditions in the southern part of India, against the Yadavas (1308), Kakatiyas (1310), Hoysalas (1311) etc.
- Amir Khusrau's Khazain-ul-Futuh** speaks about Alauddin's conquests.
- In 1303, Alauddin defeated Raja Ratan Singh of Chittor,** including Rani Padmini other Rajput women performed Jauhar (self-immolation) which is written in the book **Padmavat** by Jayasi.

Military Reforms	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1st sultan to have a large permanent standing army & paid in cash from royal treasury. Innovated: Chehra and Dagh system. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Chehra: detailed description of each soldier 2. Dagh: Branding of horses.
Land Revenue Administration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Revenue was half of the produce & was based on land under cultivation. First ruler to fix land revenue in cash. It enabled him to pay his soldiers in cash. 1st Delhi Sultan to order for measurement of land before fixing land revenue. Biswa was a standard unit of measurement. Imposed one fifth of the produce and along with-it house tax (Grahi) and pasture tax (Chari). Mukadam & Khuts had to pay taxes.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Abolished Kismat-i-Khuti (Headman's cess). Confiscated religious endowments and free lands (Inaam and Waqf). He created the post of Mustakhraj to collect revenue. He brought the area surrounding Delhi directly under the state for revenue purposes. Thus, the Iqta system was not applied there.
Architecture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> In 1296, Alauddin constructed the Hauz-i-Alai. Alauddin built the Siri Fort & camped in Siri during the Mongol invasion in 1303. He built the Qasr-i-Hazar Situn palace at the Siri fort. Famous gateway known as Alai Darwaza (entrance gate to Qutub Minar), Hauz Khas, Mahal Hazar Satoon, Jamait Khana Mosque, Alai Minar and constructed a new capital at Siri.
Market Reforms	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fixed cost of all commodities. For this purpose, he set up 4 separate markets: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> For Grains For cloth, Sugar, dried fruits & oils For horses, slaves & cattle For miscellaneous commodities. Each market was under the control of a high officer: "Shahna-i-Mandi". He also appointed Naib-I-Riyasat & Diwan-I-Riyasat to keep a check on these markets. He also received daily reports of markets from Barids (intelligence officer) and Munhiyans (secret spies). Not clear whether these reforms were applied to only Delhi or also to other towns. Market regulations of Allauddin came to an end after his death.

2.4 TUGHLAQ DYNASTY (1320 - 1413 AD)

- The Tughlaqs were also known as the **Quaraunah Turks** as the father of Ghazi Malik was a Qaraunah Turk in origin.

A. Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq (1320-1325 AD)

- Founder** of Tughlaq dynasty.
- Took title: **Ghazi (Slayer of Infidels)**.
- 1st Sultan to be credited to **start Irrigation**.
- Built a strong fort called **Tughlaqabad** near Delhi.
- Amir Khusrau's famous work **Tughlaq Nama** deals with the rise of Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq.

B. Mohammad Bin Tughlaq (1325-1351 AD)

- Jauna Khan became Sultan by the name of Mohammad bin Tughlaq.
- His reign marks the **zenith** of the Delhi Sultanate but also saw the **beginning of disintegration**.
- He **defeated Mongols**.
- Appointed official on the basis of merit.
- Advanced **secular policies**. Applied **justice to Ulema**.
- Ibn-Batuta (author of Safarnama Rehla)** (native of Morocco) was his **contemporary of Muhammad Tughlaq** and was his **envoy to China**.
- He was the **only Delhi Sultan** who had received a comprehensive literacy, religious and philosophical education.

- His ideas/decisions were ahead of his time hence he was not successful as a ruler.
- He Built **fort of Adilabad** and the city of **Jahanpanah**.
- During reign, 3 major kingdoms of South India emerged: Vijayanagar, Bahamani, and Madurai.
- Muhammad bin Tughlaq shifted his capital from Delhi to Daulatabad.

Mohammad Bin Tughlaq's Experiments

- Transferred capital from Delhi to Devagiri (Daulatabad)**. Shifted back after 2 years because of lack of water supply.
- Token Currency (using copper coins)**: Issued **bronze coins** at par with the value of the silver tanka coins. He had also introduced the copper currency system. Later withdrew both.
- He launched the Khorasan **project** to counter the threat of Chinese incursions – Failed.
- Quarachill expedition**: launched in Kumaon hills to counter the threat of Chinese incursions- failed.

C. Firoz Shah Tughlaq (1351-1388 AD)

- Adopted **policy of trying to appease** the nobles, army, theologians and of asserting his authority over only such areas which could be easily administered from the centre.
- Appointed **Khan-i-Jahan Maqbal**, a Telugu Brahmin as **Wazir or prime minister**.

- He extended the **principle of heredity** to the army & nobility. Thus, the **Iqta system was not only revived**, but also it was **made hereditary**.
 - **Malik Sarwar** was a **prominent noble and had been wazir for some time**. He **asserted independence** and assumed the **title of Malik-us-Sharq** (lord of the east).
 - Malik ruled from **Jaunpur**, it was called **Shiraz of the east**.
 - To appease theologians, Firoz took following decisions:
 - Prohibited practice of Muslim women going out to worship.
 - Gave concessions to theologians.
 - **Made jizya a separate tax**. Earlier it was part of land revenue. Only children, women, disabled exempted.
 - Started old age pension and established a department Diwan-e-Ishtihag for this.
 - Firoz Tughlaq established Employment Bureau for the Muslim unemployed.
 - He **set up hospitals** for the poor called – **Dar-ul-shifa**.
 - Established town of **Hissar** and **Firozabad** (called Firoz Shah Kotla), **Jaunpur**.
 - Set up new departments:
 - **Diwan-i-Khairat**: to make provisions for marriages of poor girls.
 - **Department for public work**.
 - **Diwan-i-Bandagan** – Department for slaves.
 - Introduced **2 new coins**:
 1. **Adha (50% Jital)**
 2. **Bitch (25 % Jital)**
 - He led **two unsuccessful expeditions to Bengal**. Bengal became free from the control of Delhi Sultanate.
 - He developed royal factories called **karkhanas** in which thousands of slaves were employed.
 - Imposed **four taxes**:
 1. **Kharaj** (land tax),
 2. **Khams** (1/5 of the looted property during wars),
 3. **Jizya** (religious tax on the Hindus), and
 4. **Zakat** (2½ per cent of the income of the Muslims which was spent for the welfare of Muslim subjects and their religion).
 - He was the **first Sultan to impose Sharb (irrigation tax)**.
 - Old monuments like the **Jama Masjid and the Qutub Minar** (which was struck by lightning, and the fourth storey was subsequently replaced by two smaller ones) **were repaired**.
- D. Nasiruddin Muhammad (1390-1398 AD)**
- He was the **last ruler of the Tughlaq dynasty**.
 - **Taimur's invasion** (1398) during his reign weakened the sultanate.

- When Timur entered Delhi there was no opposition. He withdrew from India in 1399.
- **Delhi sultanate disintegrated** towards the beginning of 15th century and a number of independent states were set up. E.g. Malwa and Gujarat etc.
- The Tughlaq empire came to an end in 1412 AD.

2.5 SAYYID DYNASTY (1414 - 1451 AD)

A. Khizr Khan (1414 - 1421 AD)

- Before his departure from India, **Timur appointed Khizr Khan** as Governor of Multan.
- He **captured Delhi and founded the Sayyid dynasty in 1414**.
- He died in 1421 and was succeeded by **Mubarak Shah** (1421-1433 CE).
- Next ruler **Alauddin Alam Shah** (1445-1451) was the weakest of the Sayyid princes. He handed over the throne to Bahlul Lodi and retired to Badaun.
- Sayyid ruled Delhi for the **shortest period (only 37 years)** among the Delhi Sultans.

2.6 LODHI DYNASTY (1451-1526 AD)

- The **Lodhi dynasty** was an **Afghan dynasty**
- It was the **fifth and final dynasty** of the Delhi Sultanate, and was **founded by Bahlul Khan Lodhi**. Sikandar Lodi succeeded him.

A. Bahlol Lodhi (1451-1489 AD)

- He was the founder of the Lodhi dynasty and the first Afghan who became the Sultan of Delhi.
- He used to address the Afghan Sardars as Mansab-e-Ali.

B. Sikandar Lodhi (1489-1517 AD)

- He was a **contemporary** of **Mahmud Begarha** of Gujrat and **Rana Sanga** of Mewar.
- He **founded the city Agra** and transferred the **capital from Delhi to Agra**.
- He **abolished the octroi duty on grains** and established a **new measurement of the yard** called the **Gaz-i- Sikandari**.
- Sikandar was orthodox and a bigot king. He **reimposed the Jizya** on Hindus.
- He was a **poet** of repute, composed under the **pen-name of Gulruk**.
- Sikandar Lodhi was succeeded by his son Ibrahim Lodhi.

C. Ibrahim Lodhi (1517-1526 AD)

- He was the **last Lodhi Sultan of Delhi**.
- Ibrahim was **defeated in 1526 at the Battle of Panipat**.
- He was arrogant. Humiliating his nobles in open courts, this made Daulat Khan Lodhi (the governor of the Punjab) invited Babar to invade India/Delhi.
- This marked the end of the Lodhi Dynasty and the **rise of the Mughal Empire in India**.

2.7 CAUSES OF THE DECLINE OF DELHI SULTANATE

- Financial instability
- Defective military organisation
- Vastness of empire
- War of succession
- Despotic and military type of government
- Invasion of Timur.

OVERVIEW OF DELHI SULTANATES	
Administration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delhi sultanate was a powerful & highly centralised state, for some time it was extended till Madurai covering almost all India. • The Sultans considered themselves as representatives of the Caliph at Baghdad (lieutenant of the faithful). • They included the name of the Caliph in the khutba or prayer and inscribed it on their coins. • The office of the Sultan was the most important and supreme political, military and legal authority. • Sultan was also the commander in chief of the military forces. • Sultan was also responsible for the maintenance of law & justice. • There was no clear law of succession during this period.
Central Government	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Naib: Practically enjoyed all the powers of the Sultan and exercised general control over all the departments. • Wazir: Heading the finance department called Diwani Wizarat. • Military department: Diwani Ariz, Headed by Ariz-i-mumalik. Responsibility was to recruit the soldiers and administer the military department. • Diwan Risalat: Department of religious affairs. Headed by chief Sadar. Grants were made by this department for the construction and maintenance of mosques, tombs and madrasas. • The head of the judicial department was the chief Qazi. • Muslim personal law or sharia was followed in civil matters. • Hindus were governed by their own personal law and their cases were dispensed by the • Criminal law was based on the rules and regulations made by the Sultans. • Department of correspondence: Called Diwan I Insha. All the correspondence between the ruler and the officials was dealt with by this department. • Wakil-i-Dar: Officer responsible for maintenance of proper decorum at the court.
Local Administration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The provinces were called Iqtas under the control of muqtis or walis. • Their duty was to maintain law and order and collect the land revenue. • The provinces were divided into shiqs and pargana. • The Shiq was under the control of Shiqdar. • The pargana comprising a number of villages was headed by Amil. • The village headman was known as Muqaddam or Chaudhri. The village accountant was called Patwari.
Economy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The land was classified into three categories: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Iqta land: Lands assigned to officials as iqtas instead of payment for their services. 2. Khalisa land: Land under the direct control of the Sultan and the revenues collected were spent for the maintenance of royal court and royal household. 3. Inam land: Land assigned or granted to religious leaders or religious institutions. Peasantry paid one third of their produce as land revenue, and sometimes even one half.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Sarais or rest houses on the highways were maintained for the convenience of the travellers. ● Sericulture was introduced on a large scale. ● Bengal and Gujarat were famous for fine quality fabrics, Cambay (Gujrat) was famous for textile, gold & silver work. Sonargao was famous for raw silk & muslin. ● Indian textiles were exported to China. ● The royal karkhanas supplied the goods needed to the Sultan and his household. ● Gold coins or dinars became popular during the reign of Alauddin Khalji after his South Indian conquests. Copper coins were less in number and dateless. ● Turks introduced many new crafts (manufacturing of paper) and techniques ex- use of iron stirrup, amour. It led to the growth of the metallurgical industry. ● They also introduced spinning wheels. ● Postal system based on relays of horses or fast-runners was developed. ● There was little change in the structure of the Hindu society during this period. ● Practice of Sati was widely prevalent.
Social Life	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Seclusion of women and wearing of purdah became common among the upper-class women. ● The Arabs and Turks brought the purdah system into India and it became widespread among the Hindu women in the upper classes of north India. ● During the Sultanate period, the Muslim society remained divided into several ethnic and racial groups - Turks, Iranians, Afghans and Indian Muslims etc. There were no inter-marriages between these groups. ● Very rarely the Hindu nobles were given high positions in the government. ● The Hindus were considered Zimmis or protected people for which they were forced to pay a tax called Jizya.
Art and Architecture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Turks introduced: arches, domes, lofty towers or minarets and decorations using the Arabic script. ● Arch or dome was not a Turkish or Muslim invention. They learned from Rome, developed and conducted many experiments in its use. ● Indians knew about Arch & Dome but they didn't use it on a large scale. ● Turks also used slab and Beam methods in buildings. They also added colour to their buildings by using marbles, red and yellow sand stones. ● They used geometrical & floral designs with inscriptions containing verses of the Quran. It was called Arabesque. ● They also freely borrowed Hindu motifs such as Swastik. ● Converted temples and other structures into mosques. ● The Quwwat-ul-Islam mosque near Qutub Minar in Delhi was built by using the materials obtained from destroying many Hindu and Jain temples. ● The palace complex called Tughlaqabad with its beautiful lake was built during the period of Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq. ● Muhammad bin Tughlaq built the tomb of Ghyasuddin on a high platform. ● Kotla fort at Delhi was the creation of Firoz Tughlaq. ● Features of Tughlaq architecture: Sloping walls, combined principles of arch, lintel and beam e.g. - Hauz khas, use of grey sandstone and minimum decoration. ● Lodi placed a building, especially tombs, on a high platform. ● Some of the tombs are placed in the midst of gardens. ex- The Lodi garden in Delhi. ● Double dome was another feature of Lodis architecture. E.g. Mothi ki Masjid (built by Sikandar Lodi)

Music	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> New musical instruments such as Sarangi and Rabab were introduced during this period. Amir Khusrau introduced many new ragas such as Ghora and Sanam. He evolved a new style of light music known as Qwalis by blending the Hindu and Iranian systems. Invention of sitar was also attributed to him. Indian classical work Ragadarpan was translated into Persian during the reign of Firoz Tughlaq. Pir Bhodan, a Sufi saint was one of the great musicians of this period. Raja Man Singh of Gwalior was a great lover of music. He encouraged the composition of a great musical work called Man Kautuhal.
--------------	---

List of Administrative and Agrarian Terms used in Sultanate Period

• Alai Tanka: Tanks of Alauddin Khilji.	• Alamatha-i-Sultanate: Insignia of royalty.
• Amil: Revenue officer.	• Amir: Commander: The third highest official grade.
• Amir-i-dad: Officer-in-charge of justice.	• Amir-i-akhur: Officer commanding the horses.
• Amir-i-hajib: Officer-in-charge of the royal.	• Amir-i-koh: Officer in-charge of agriculture.
• Khalisa court: (also called barbek in Turkish).	
• Alamatha-i-Sultanate: Insignia of royalty.	• Barbek: Officer in-charge of the royal court
• Ariz: Officer in-charge of the muster, equipment of the soldiers and the horses.	• Galla Bakshi, Kankut: System of collection of land revenue.
• Barid: Intelligence officer appointed by the state to collect information.	• Diwan-i-arz: Office of the ministry of war.
• Dagh: Mark of branding on the horses.	• Iqtadars: A person in whose charge iqta has been placed.
• Karkhana: Royal factory or enterprise; they were of two kinds - ratibi, for looking after animals and ghair-ratibi for producing commodities required by the state.	• Hukm-i-mushahida: Assessment (Of land revenue) by inspection only.
• Khidmati: Service dues.	• Khalisa: Land controlled directly by the king.
• Madad-i-mash: Grant of land or pension to religious or deserving persons.	• Khuts: Village headmen or revenue collector.
• Muqta: Governor; person-in-charge of an iqta or a medieval province.	• Muhtasib: An officer appointed to maintain law and order village headman; literally the first or senior man.
• Amir-i-Tarab: Entertainment tax.	• Mustaufi-i-mamalakat: Accountant for the whole kingdom.
• Mustaufi-i-mamalik: Auditor, for the whole kingdom.	• Haqq-i-Shirb: Profits from canal irrigation.
• Hukm-i-masahat: Assessment of land revenue according to measurement.	• Chungi-i-Galla: Tax on grain.

Persian Narratives

Author	Persian Text	Regime/Ruler	Year of Completion of text	Rulers Covered in Text
Fakhr-i-Mudabbr	Tarikh-i-Fakhraal-din Mubarak Shah	Qutbuddin Aibak	1208 AD	Qutbuddin Aibak

Minhaj us-Siraj Juzjani	Tabaqat-i-Nasiri	Nasiruddin Mahmud	1260 AD	Qutbuddin Aibak, Iltutmish, Raziya, Bahram Shah, Masud Shah and Nasiruddin Mahmud
Amir Khusru	Miftah-ul-Futuh	Jalaluddin Khalji	1292 AD	Jalaluddin Khalji
	Khazain-ul-Futuh	Alauddin Khalji	1312 AD	First 15 years of Alauddin Khalji's reign
	Nuh Sipihr	Mubarak Khalji	1318 AD	Mubarak Khalji
	Tughlaq Nama	Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq	1320 AD	Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq
Amir Hasan Sijzi	Fawaid-al-Fuad	Shaikh Nizamuddin Auliya	1322 AD	-
Ibn Battuta	Tughlaq nama, Safarnama, Rehala	Muhammad bin Tughlaq	-	Muhammad bin Tughlaq
Hamid Qalandar	Khair-ul-Majalis	Shaikh Nasiruddin	1350 AD	Muhammad bin Tughlaq
Khwaja Malik Isami	Futuh-us-Salatin	Alauddin Hasan Bahman Shah	1350 AD	Muhammad bin Tughlaq

2.8 BIHAR SPECIAL: DELHI SULTANATE AND BIHAR

Turkish rule in Bihar

- **Background: The region of Bihar was not an organised political unit at the time of Turkish invasions in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries.** The river Ganges was a geographical dividing line as well as a political boundary line between north and central Bihar. Most of northern Bihar was then under the Karnata kingdom of Mithila while central Bihar was under various small rulers. The most important feature of the history of mediaeval Bihar was that all these separate regions came under an organised political unit and administrative control.
- The real credit for the establishment of Turkish power in Bihar goes to Bakhtiyar Khilji. He was an assistant to Malik Hussamuddin, the commander of Banaras and Awadh region. In the twelfth-thirteenth centuries, he carried out military campaigns on the eastern side of the Karmanasa river in Bihar. At that time the ruler of the Sen dynasty was Lakshmanasena and the Pala dynasty ruler was Indradyumnapal.
- The first important success of Bakhtiyar Khilji was the conquest of Odantapuri (Bihar Sharif) which was completed in 1198 AD. After that he attacked Nandiya (Bengal) in 1203-04 which was the capital of Lakshmansena. He did not face any special opposition, but in Nadia, Lakshmansena got scared of him and fled from his capital without fighting.

- As a result, the Turks controlled the southern plain of the river Ganges and most of the parts of Bengal also came under their control. Bakhtiyar organised these regions into one administrative unit and made his capital at Lakhnauti (Lakshmanavati).
- Bakhtiyar Khilji formally accepted Aibak's sovereignty, but in practice he remained the ruler of his conquered territories. After his death, these areas were probably conquered by Aibak, but maintaining control over Bihar proved difficult for the Sultans of Delhi.
- To the east of Bihar was the region of Bengal and due to geographical reasons the political conditions of Bihar and Bengal were virtually identical. Distance from Delhi, lack of adequate transport facilities and ambitions of local feudal lords, all these were the reasons as a result of which separatist sentiment remained strong in Bengal and this region kept striving for separation. This effort was also successful and independent states were formed several times in Bengal during the Sultanate period.
- In this situation, the rulers of Bengal kept trying to control Bihar as well because they wanted to develop the region of Bihar as an advance defence line to protect themselves from the possibility of any army attack from Delhi in the west. Therefore, the region of Bihar remained the arena of struggle between the Sultans of Delhi and Bengal (Lakhnauti).
- Campaigns of Iltutmish, Balban, Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq, Firoz Shah and Sikandar Lodi took place in this region.

Mamluk Sultans and Bihar

- Iltutmish was the first Mamluk Sultan to organise a military campaign in Bihar.
- Around 1225, Iltutmish defeated the ruler of Bengal, Hisamuddin Evaz, and captured Bihar. But his successors were unable to maintain control over the region.
- Balban was the second Mamluk Sultan who campaigned in this region. He suppressed the rebellion of Tughril Khan. During this period, the control of the Turks was established only on the southern plain adjacent to the river Ganges.

Bihar During Khilji Reign

- Jalaluddin Firoz Khilji was the head of the vast Khilji clan scattered all over India. The people of this clan had ruled Bihar during the time of Bakhtiyar Khilji.
- During the time of Jalaluddin Firoz Khilji, the region of Bihar was not under the Delhi Sultanate but under Sukunuddin Kaikaus, the ruler of Bengal.
- According to the Maheshwar inscription of Begusarai, Bihar was invaded by the Delhi Sultanate. According to the Lakhisarai inscription of 1297 AD, an officer of Subedar Firoz Aitgin got a mosque constructed in this area.
- Alauddin Khalji sent Muhammad Ismail to attack Bihar in 1297, who defeated the then Carnatic king Shukra Singh.
- Shamsuddin Firoz ascended the throne of Bengal in 1301 after Rukhnuddin Kaikaus. At that time Hatim Khan was the Subedar of Bihar.

Bihar in Tughlaq Period

- During the Tughlaq period, the decisive supremacy of the Sultans of Delhi was established over Bihar. It is possible to know the history of Tughlaq rule in Bihar from the works like Malfjat (collection of sayings) and Manaqibul Asafiya of the contemporary Sufi saint Hazrat Sharfuddin Yahya Maneri.
- In 1324, Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq, on his way back from the Bengal campaign, defeated the Carnatic ruler, Harisinhadeva, in North Bihar.
- In the time of Muhammad bin Tughlaq, Bihar's governor (Maqta) Mazdul Mulk also campaigned against Harisingh Dev and forced him to take refuge in the hills.
- The region of Tirhut was merged with the Tughlaq Empire and was renamed as Tughlaqpur.
- The coin issued by Muhammad bin Tughlaq is still available in this area.
- Muhammad bin Tughlaq also built a fort and Jama Masjid in Darbhanga.
- Firoz Shah Tughlaq also came to Bihar in the course of his Bengal campaign (1359). His army probably moved from the Jharkhand region towards Bengal.

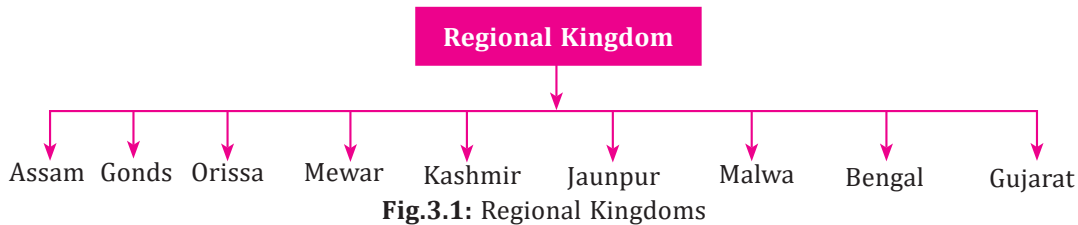
- In Sirte Firozshahi, there is also a discussion about the meeting of the Sultan with the famous saint Sheikh Ahmed Chirmposh of Bihar.
- Many records of Firoz Shah Tughlaq have also been received from the region of Patna and Gaya. In the inscriptions of some Jain temples of Rajgir, there is also talk of Firoz giving grants to them.
- The capital of Bihar during the Tughlaq period was at Bihar Sharif situated in the modern Nalanda district.
- It is believed that the state of Bihar got its name Bihar during this period. This nomenclature was based on the Buddhist Viharas.
- The city of Bihar Sharif was the main centre of Buddhism. The Mahavihara of Odantapuri was located here. Along with this, many other Buddhist viharas were also in this area.
- Due to the availability of Buddhist Viharas, the Turks called this city Arje Bihar i.e. the land of Viharas. The entire administrative unit associated with it was also called Bihar.
- The first mention of the name Bihar in the mediaeval period is found in Tabaqate Nasiri, a work of Minhaj Us Siraj in the middle of the 13th century.
- The most important name among the administrators of Bihar during the Tughlaq period is that of Malik Ibrahim, commonly known as Malik Bayan. Its tomb located on a hill in Bihar Sharif is a beautiful example of Tughlaq period architecture, the special attraction of which is its conical dome.

PREVIOUS YEAR QUESTIONS

1. Who was the first ruler of the slave dynasty?
[47 B.P.S.C. (Pre) 2005 & B.P.S.C. (Pre) 2011]
(a) Iltutmish (b) **Qutbuddin Aibak**
(c) Razia (d) Balban
2. The capital of Qutbuddin Aibak was-
[41st B.P.S.C. (Pre) 1996]
(a) **Lahore** (b) Delhi
(c) Ajmer (d) Lakhnauti
3. What is 'Dhai Din Ka Jhopra'? [B.P.S.C. (Pre) 2015]
(a) **Mosque** (b) Temple
(c) Sant's hut (d) tower
4. By whom was Qutub Minar completed?
[B.P.S.C. (Pre) 2022]
(a) **Iltutmish** (b) Qutbuddin Aibak
(c) Ulugh Khan (d) Razia Sultan
(e) None of the above/More than one of the above
5. Who was the first Muslim conqueror of Bihar?
[B.P.S.C. (Pre) 2016]
(a) Malik Ibrahim (b) Iltutmish
(c) **Bakhtiyar Khilji** (d) Alimardan Khilji
(e) None of the above/More than one of the above

3

Regional Kingdoms



Ahoms of Assam	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The history of Assam is the history of the confluence of the Tibeto-Burman (Sino-Tibetan), Indo-Aryan, and Austroasiatic cultures, as well as the confluence of people from the east, west and the north. The Ahoms were a Mongoloid tribe from north Burma (present day Myanmar) who had succeeded in establishing a powerful kingdom in the 13th century, and had become Hinduised in course of time. In fact, the name Assam is derived from them. They suppressed the old political system of Bhuiyans (landlords). Ahom state was dependent on forced labour called Paiks. Almost all male adult served in the king's army during war Buranjis is the historical chronicle of Ahoms. Ahom society was divided into Khel or clan.
Gonds	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Gond lived in the vast forestland mentioned as Gondawana. Akbarnama mentions the Gond kingdom in Garh Katanga. The kingdom was divided into: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Garh 2. Chaurasi (unit of 84 village below Garh) 3. Bahot (division of Chaurasi in 12 villages) The famous queen Durgawati belongs to this dynasty.
Orissa	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Gajapati dynasty was established by Kapilendra Deva in 1435 CE, after the fall of the last eastern Ganga king, Bhanudeva IV. Gajapati etymologically means a king with an army of elephants. Narsinghdeo of this dynasty constructed Konark Temple. In the middle of the 15th CE there was the rise of Gajapati rulers; they ruled Orissa until the end of the Lodhi period.
Mewar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mewar or Udaipur Kingdom was originally called Medhpaat and over time, the name Medhpath became Mewar. Interestingly, the rulers of Mewar used the title "Maharana" (Prime Minister or Custodian) instead of the typical title Maharaja (King). Rana Kumbha (1433-1468 AD) was the most famous ruler. Rana kumbha wrote books like Sangeet Priya, Sudha Prabandh, Rasik Priya, Kam Raja Ratisara etc. Kumbha erected a Victory Tower (Kirti Stambh) at Chittor, a mark of victory of his conquests. He also consolidated the fortification of Chittor and constructed a road running through its seven doors. He was acclaimed as Sangeet Shiromani and wrote an outstanding treatise on Indian music titled Sangeet-Raj as well as other works like Sangeet Mimansa, Sangeet Ratnakar, and Suprabhath.

Kashmir	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● In Rajatarangini (history of Kashmir written by Kalhana in the mid- 12th century) it is stated that the valley of Kashmir was formerly a lake. ● Zainul Abedeen was the greatest ruler of Kashmir. He was also known as Bud Shah (the Great Sultan) and as Akbar of Kashmir who was benevolent, liberal, and an enlightened ruler. ● He contributed to the agricultural development of Kashmir by constructing dams and canals and initiated the maintenance of the agricultural records. ● He also constructed Zaina Lank, the artificial island on the Wullur Lake. ● Many Sanskrit works like Rajtarangini, Mahabharat were translated into Persian under him. ● In c.1586 CE, Akbar conquered Kashmir and made it a part of the Mughal Empire.
The Sharaqī of Jaunpur	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Malik Sarwar laid the foundation of the Sharqi dynasty. ● Malik Muhammed Jaisi the writer of “Padmavat” was the court Poet. ● Jaunpur evolved a distinct architecture that is known as the Sharqi style of architecture. Jaunpur was known as the Shiraz of India. ● Most notable examples of Sharqi style of architecture in Jaunpur are the Atala Masjid, the Lal Darwaja Masjid, and the Jama Masjid.
Malwa	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The state of Malwa was situated on the Central highland plateau between the rivers Narmada and Tapi. It commanded the trunk route between Gujarat and northern India. ● From the beginning, the kingdoms of Gujarat and Malwa were bitter rivals and were generally found in opposite camps on almost each occasion. ● Dilawar Khan (governor of the Malwa province during the decline of Delhi Sultanate) threw off his allegiance to Delhi after the invasion of Timur. He shifted his capital from Dhar to Mandu.
Bengal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Bengal was a significant regional kingdom under the Palas in the 8th century and the Senas in the 12th century. The long distance, uncomfortable climate and poor means of communications made it difficult for the Delhi Sultanate to control this province. Therefore, it was easy for Bengal to assert its independence. ● Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq partitioned Bengal into three independent administrative divisions: Lakhnauti, Satgaon and Sonargaon. ● In 1342, Ilyas Khan united Bengal and became its ruler under the title of Shamsuddin Ilyas Khan founding the Ilyas Shah dynasty.
Gujarat	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Gujarat was one of the richest provinces of the Delhi Sultanate on account of the excellence of its handicrafts, its flourishing seaports and the richness of its soil. ● Zafar Khan (1407-1411) was the son of Sadharan who was a Rajput and later converted to Islam. Zafar Khan proclaimed himself an independent ruler after Timur's invasion and assumed the title of Muzaffar Shah. He founded the dynasty of Muzaffarid. ● Ahmad Shah-I and Fateh Khan (Mahmud Begarha) were the two important rulers of this kingdom.



4

Vijayanagara Empire

4.1 INTRODUCTION

- The Vijayanagar kingdom constituted **four dynasties** — **Sangama** (1336–1485 CE), **Saluva** (1485–1505 CE), **Tuluva** (1505–1570 CE) and **Aravidu** (till the end of the 17th century).
- It was **founded in 1336 CE by Harihara and Bukka** (with the blessings of Guru Vidyaranya) of the **Sangama dynasty** who originally served **under the Kakatiya rulers of Warangal**.
- Vijayanagara kingdom was a kind of **cooperative commonwealth at first**.
- **Early Vijayanagar rulers** were followers of **Shaivism**. **Virupaksha** was their **family God**. Later they came under the influence of **Vaishnavism**. However, **Siva** continued to be worshipped.
- There was constant **conflict between Vijayanagar Empire and Bahamani kingdom** over **Raichur doab (fertile region between Krishna and Tungabhadra)**, Tungabhadra doab (fertile areas of **Krishna-Godavari delta**) & **Marathwada**.
- In the south its main rivals were the **Sultans of Madurai**.
- During the reign of **Rama Raya**, the combined forces of **Bijapur, Ahmednagar, Golkonda and Bidar** defeated him at the **Battle of Talikota in 1565** which marked an **end of the Vijayanagar Empire**.
- The last ruler of Vijayanagar was **Sri Ranga III**.
- The **copper-plate inscriptions** such as the **Srirangam copper-plates of Devaraya II** provide the genealogy and achievements of Vijayanagar rulers.

Dynasty	Information
Sangama (1336 - 1485 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sangama was the first dynasty to rule over the Vijayanagara empire. The founders of the empire, Harihara I and Bukka Raya belonged to this dynasty. It ruled from 1336 AD to 1485 AD. • Brothers founded a new city of Vidyanagar or Vijayanagara (meaning city of victory) on the south bank of river Tungabhadra.
Saluva (1485 - 1505 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Saluva dynasty, founded by Narasimha, succeeded the Sangama dynasty as the second dynasty of the empire. It ruled from 1485 to 1505 AD. They ruled over almost the whole of South India.
Tuluva (1505 - 1570 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tuluva, founded by Vir Narsimha, was the third dynasty, which ruled Vijayanagar Empire. It ruled from the Tuluva dynasty. • The most famous king of Vijayanagar Empire, Krishna Deva Raya belonged to this dynasty.
Aravidu (1570 - 1650 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Aravidu, founded by Tirumala, was the fourth and last Hindu dynasty to rule Vijayanagar kingdom in South India.

4.2 IMPORTANT RULERS OF VIJAYANAGARA EMPIRE

Proudhadevaraya (Devaraya II)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The most famous king from the Sangama dynasty. • Titles: 'Elephant Hunter', 'Dakshinapathada Chakravarthi'. • Extended Vijayanagara from Gulbarga to Sri Lanka & Telangana to Kerala. • His commander: Lakkanna Dandesha.
---	---

Krishna Devaraya (1509-1529 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The most famous king was the Vijayanagara Empire (from Tuluva dynasty). • He is also known as Andhra Bhoja • Waged war against Bahamani kingdom & kept them under check. • Liberated Mohammad Shah & assumed the title "Yavanapriya Prathishta Pranacharya". • The author of Manu Charitramu was the greatest among Ashtadiggajas. • His empire extended from the river Krishna in the north to River Cauvery in the south; the Arabian Sea in the west to Bay of Bengal in the east. • He had a cordial relationship with Portuguese. • He authored Amuktamalyada (Telugu work on polity) and Jambavati Kalyanam (Sanskrit drama). • Krishna Deva Raya was a great builder as well. He built the Hazara Rama temple and the Vittalaswami temple. • Patronised Telugu, Kannada, Sanskrit, and Tamil scholars & poets. • He had 8 eminent scholars Ashtadiggajas at his royal court. • He built a new city called Nagalapuram in memory of his queen Nagaladevi.
Ashtadiggajas of Krishna Devaraya	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A group of eight scholars adorned Krishnadevaraya's court and they were: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Allasani Peddanna – the author of Manucharitam, he was also known as Andhra Kavita Pitamaha. 2. Nandi Thimmana – the author of Parijatapaharanam 3. Madayyagari Mallana 4. Dhurjati 5. Ayyalaraju Ramabhadru 6. Pingali Surana 7. Ramaraja Bhushana 8. Tenali Ramakrishna

4.3 ASPECTS OF THE VIJAYANAGARA EMPIRE

Administration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The king enjoyed absolute authority in executive, judicial & legislative matters. • The succession to the throne was hereditary. • Administrative units divided: Mandalams, Nadus, Sthalas and finally into Gramas. • Important characteristics of the Vijayanagar administration was the amara- nayaka system. • Nayankara System: The top-grade officers of the army were known as Nayaks/Poligars. • They were granted land in lieu of their services which were called Amaram. • Mandaleswar or Nayaka was the governor of Mandalam. • He had considerable autonomy- had the right to issue coins of small denominations & right to impose new tax or remit old ones. • Sources of income: land revenue, tributes, and gifts from vassals and feudal chiefs, customs at ports, & taxes on various professions. • Land revenue was fixed at generally one sixth of the produce. • Manyams were tax free lands. • A body of 12 functionaries known as Ayangars, conducted village affairs.
Socio-Economic Conditions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Sangama rulers were chiefly Saivaites and Virupaksha was their family deity. • Allasani Peddana, in his Manucharitam, mentions the four castes that existed in the Vijayanagar society: Viprulu or Brahmins, Rajulu or Rachavaru Matikaratalu or Vaishyas, Nalavajativaru or Sudras.

Position of Women	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Women occupied a high position and took an active part in the political, social and literary life of the empire. The practice of dancing girls attached to temples was also in vogue. Women even went to battles. It was the only empire in Medieval India which employed women in state services. The plight of the widow was pitiable, but they could remarry. The prevalence of Sati or Sahagamana in the Vijayanagar Empire is proved from both inscriptions and foreign accounts of the period. Untouchability existed and various classes such as Kambalattars, dombaris, jogis and maravars were treated as untouchables. Slavery was quite common and Nicolo de Conti says that those who failed to repay debts became the property of the creditor.
Cultural Contributions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Chief characteristics of the Vijayanagara architecture were the construction of tall Raya Gopurams or gateways and the Kalyanamandapam with carved pillars in the temple premises. The sculptures on the pillars were carved with distinctive features. The horse was the most common animal found in these pillars. Most important temples built: Vittalaswamy and Hazara Ramaswamy temples, the Stone chariot at Hampi. The Varadharaja and Ekambaranatha temples at Kanchipuram. Different languages such as Sanskrit, Telugu, Kannada and Tamil flourished in the regions.
Army and Military Organisation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The conflict between Vijayanagar Empire and the Bahmani kingdom lasted for many years Vijayanagar army was very well-organised and efficient. It consisted of the cavalry, infantry, artillery, and elephants. Port of Malabar was the centre of this trade and trade in other luxury commodities Vijayanagar state also was familiar with the use of firearms and employed Turkish and Portuguese experts to train the soldiers in the latest weapons of warfare.

4.4 THE NAYAK SYSTEM

- The term **Nayak** was used in many Telugu and Kannada spoken areas from the 13th century in context to a military leader. This system was similar to the **iqta system** followed in Delhi Sultanate. Inscriptions refer to this system as **nayakkattanam** in Tamil, **nayaktanam** in Kannada and **nayankaramu** in Telugu. This system also finds its mention in the accounts of **Nuniz** and **Paes** and in Telugu work, **Rayavachakamu**.
- Most of these Nayaks were the Kannadiga and Telugu warriors. These chiefs controlled production within their territories by creating **pettai (commercial centres)**. The **most famous Nayak** during **Krishnadevaraya** was **Chellapa**.
- Nayaks were also known as **Palaiyagar** or **Palegar** who had to **maintain a fixed number of soldiers, horses and elephants** at the service of the state.

- After the **Battle of Talikota**, these Nayak chiefs became more or less independent of Vijayanagar kingdom. The 17th century was marked as a century of these bigger Nayak kingdoms like : **Madurai, Ikkeri and Tanjore**.

4.5 LAND REVENUE ADMINISTRATION

- The **land revenue was the main source of income** for the government. There was a separate land revenue department. To assess revenue, the **entire land was classified into four parts** like **wet land, dry land, orchards and woods**.
- The government also levied other taxes like the grazing tax, the **marriage tax**, the **customs duty**, tax on **gardening** and **taxes on manufacture of various articles** and even military contributions in times of distress.
- The rate of taxation was rather high, but the taxes were never extorted. The mode of payment of these taxes was both in cash and kind.

Tax

- The king of Vijaynagar charged a little more than **one sixth of the revenue**.
- According to an inscription, various rates of taxes were as follows:
 - 1/3rd of rice (pluruvai) during winter.**
 - 1/4th of sesame, ragi and horsegram.**
 - 1/6th of millet and other crops.**

4.6 FOREIGN TRAVELLER DURING VIJAYANAGARA EMPIRE

Ruler	Foreign Traveller
Harihara I	Abu Abdullah/Ibn Battuta (Morocco)
Devaraya II	Nicolò de Conti (Italy)
	Abdur Razzaq (Persia)
Virupaksha Raya II	Athanasius Nikitin (Russia)
Krishna Deva Raya	Ludovico de Varthema (Italy)
	Duarte Barbosa (Portugal)
	Dominigo Paes (Portugal)
Achyuta Deva Raya	Fernao Nuniz (Portugal)
Rudramma Devi	Marco Polo (Italy)

PREVIOUS YEAR QUESTIONS

- The Persian traveller 'Abdur Razzak' came to India during the reign of which king? [B.P.S.C. (Pre)2016]

(a) Devaraya I (b) Krishna Devaraya I
(c) **Devaraya II** (d) Krishnaraya II
(e) None of the above / More than one of the above
- Who was the founder of Vijayanagara Empire? [B.P.S.C. (Pre)2022]

(a) Devaraya I (b) Krishnadevaraya
(c) **Harihara-Bukka** (d) Veer Narasimha Rao
(e) None of the above/More than one of the above
- Vijayanagara king **Krishnadevaraya** fought the Battle of Golconda with which king? [43rd B.P.S.C. (Pre)1995]

(a) **Quli Qutb Shah** (b) Qutbuddin Aibak
(c) Ismail Adil Khan (d) Gajapati
- What was the main feature of the 'financial system' of the Vijayanagara Empire? [39th B.P.S.C. (Pre)1994]

(a) Surplus rent (b) **Land revenue**
(c) Income from ports (d) Currency system
- Where are the relics of Vijayanagara Empire found? [B.P.S.C. (Pre)2017]

(a) Bijapur (b) Golconda
(c) **Hampi** (d) Baroda
(e) None of the above/More than one of the above



5.1 INTRODUCTION

- The Bahmani Sultanate was a **Persianised Muslim state of the Deccan** in South India and one of the major mediaeval Indian kingdoms.
- Though the region was ruled by a Muslim it was **not an exclusive 'Muslim State'**. Hindus were also part of it as well.
- Nobles of the Bahmani kingdom were categorised in two categories: **Afaquis** and **Deccanis**.
- **Deccanis** were nobles of native origin while **Afaquis** had foreign origin.
- It was **founded by Alauddin Hasan Bahman Shah (in 1347)**, also known as **Hasan Gangu**, revolting against the Delhi Sultanate of Muhammad bin Tughlaq.
- There was **total 14 Bahaman Sultans**.

5.2 BAHMANI SULTANATE

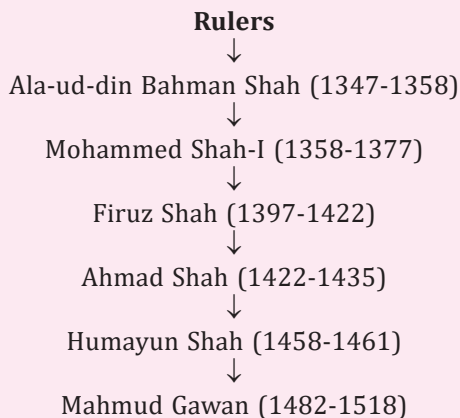


Fig.5.1 Rulers of Bahmani kingdom

- After reshuffling of capital from **Daulatabad** to **Delhi** by **Muhammad bin Tughlaq**, **Zafar Khan** conquered **Daulatabad in 1345** from where he **shifted his capital to Gulbarga in 1347** for security reasons. He was also known as **Ala-ud-din Bahman Shah** who became the founder of this kingdom, which extended over the entire Deccan.
- The history of Bahmani kingdom is **divided into two parts**:
 1. **1st phase** : **Gulbarga** as the capital (1347-1422)
 2. **2nd phase** : **Bidar** as the capital (1422-1538 AD)
- The Bahamani kingdom acted as a **cultural link between the South & the North**.

- Kingdom stretched from north to south from the Wainganga river to Krishna and east to west from Bhongir to Daulatabad.
- Bahmani Empire was **always at war with Vijayanagara Empire** for control over Deccan.
- **Firoz Shah invaded Vijayanagar and defeated Krishna Deva Raya I.**

Additional Information

- Three distinct and **resourceful areas** were the reasons for a **continuous conflict** between the **Vijyanagara rulers** and **Bahmani Sultans** :
 1. The **Tungabhadra Doab**
 2. The **Krishna Godavari Delta**
 3. The **Marathwada country**

- **Ahmad Shah Wali** later **shifted Capital from Gulbarga to Bidar**.
- **Muhammad Shah III** became the sultan at the age of 9 after the death of his brother **Nizam Shah** and **Mahmud Gawan** served as **Prime Minister**.
- Bahmani Empire reached its **zenith** during the time of **Mahmud Gawan**.
- **Kalimullah** was the **last king** of the Bahmani dynasty.

Administration under Mohammed I

He appointed a council of 8 ministers :

1. **Vakil-us-Saltana/lieutenant of the kingdom** : The immediate subordinate of the sovereign.
2. **Waziri-Kull** : Supervisor of work of all ministers.
3. **Amir-i-Jumla** : Minister of finance.
4. **Wazir-i-Ashraf** : Minister of foreign affairs and master of ceremonies.
5. **Nazir** : Assistant minister of finance.
6. **Peshwa** : Associated with the lieutenant of the kingdom.
7. **Kotwal** : Chief of police and city magistrate of the capital.
8. **Sadr-i-jahan** : Chief Justice and minister of religious affairs and endowments.

Mahmud Gawan	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He was Iranian by birth and was a trader. He was granted the title of Malik-ul-Tujjar (Chiefs of Merchants) by Humayun Shah. • For almost 20 years he dominated the state affairs of the Bahmani. Under his leadership Bahamani kingdom saw resurgence. • He divided the kingdom into eight provinces called Tarafs. Each Taraf was governed by the Tarafdar. • The salary was paid in cash or by assigning a Jagir. • A tract of land called Khalisa was set apart for expenses of the Sultan. • Introduced use of Gunpowder in war against Vijayanagara Kings. • He built a college at Bidar in Persian Style architecture. • Executed in 1481 by Muhammad Shah, Deccan nobles plotted against him.
---------------------	--

- After **Gawan's Execution**, **Bahmani kingdom disintegrated** into **Five Kingdoms** (Known as **Deccan Sultanates**):

1.	Nizam Shahis of Ahmednagar (1490-1633 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Founder: Ahmad Nizam Shah. • It was conquered & annexed by Shah Jahan in 1633.
2.	AdilShahis of Bijapur (1490-1686 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Founder: Yusuf Adil Shah. • Gol Gumbaz was built by Muhammad Adil Shah. • Bijapur was conquered & annexed by Aurangzeb in 1687.
3.	Qutub Shahis of Golconda (1518-1687 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Founder: Muhammad Quli Qutub shah. • He built the famous Golconda fort and made it capital. • Muhammad Quli Qutub Shah founded the city Hyderabad (originally known as Bhagyanagar) and also built Charminar. • It was annexed by Aurangzeb in 1687.
4.	Imad Shahis of Berar (1490-1574 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Founder: Fatullah khan Imad ul Mulk. • Capital: Daulatabad • Annexed by rulers of Ahmednagar.
5.	Barid Shahis of Bidar (1528-1619 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Founder: Ali Barid • Annexed by Bijapur rulers.

Glossary

- **Turquoise** : It is a semi-precious stone (sky blue in colour). Turquoise throne is one of the bejewelled royal seats of Persian kings described in **Firdausi's ShahNama.**
- **Pradhani** (Vijayanagar) : Prime Minister
- **Padikaval** : Selling of Policing rights
- **Talara** : Watchman
- **Wazir-i-kul** (Bahmani) : Prime Minister
- **Wazir ashraf** : Who controlled foreign affairs and royal court

KEY TERMS AND THEIR MEANINGS

Pradhani	Prime minister
Raysani	Recorded oral order of king
Karnikam	Accountant
Kadamal, Irai, Vrai	Kinds of taxes
Athavan	Land revenue department



6

Bhakti Movement

6.1 INTRODUCTION

- It was a **religious reform movement** during mediaeval times which emphasised **single-minded intense devotion to God**.
- Bhakti movement was **based on the doctrine** that the **relationship between god and man is through love and worship** rather than through performing any ritual or religious ceremonies.
- The **origin of Bhakti** is traced in **Vedas**, but its real **development took place after the 7th century**.
- It was initiated by **Shaiva Nayanars & Vaishnavite Alvars** in south India, later spread to all regions.
- **Emotional Side** of **Vaishnavism** represented by: **Alvars** through collective songs – **Prabhandam**.
- **Intellectual side of Vaishnavism** represented by **Acharyas**.

Nayanars	Alvars
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Devotees of Shiva • Thirumarai: Compilation of hymns of Nayanars by the highest priest of Raja RajaCholaI, Nambiyandar Nambi. • The details of the lives and of the saints are described in the work 'Tevaram' which is also called the Dravida Veda. • Important saints: Tiru Neelakanta, Meiporul, Viral Minda, Amaraneedi, Karaikkal Ammaiyar (woman) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Devotees of Vishnu • Divya Prabandha- Compilation of the hymns of the Alvars saints - poets. • Important saints: Andal (only female Alwar saint who is referred to as the 'Meera of the South'), Thirumazhisai Alvar, Thiruppaan Alvar, Nammalwar, Kulasekara.

- The Bhakti saints were divided into **two schools** depending on the way they imagined God.

Nirgun	Sagun
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Believe invisible formless god, without attributes. • Nirguna bhakta's poetry was Jnana-shrayi or had roots in knowledge. • Nirgun Saints: Guru Nanak, Ravidas, Kabir 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Believe God with form & attributes. • Saguna bhakta's poetry was Prema-shrayi, or with roots in love. • Saguna Saints: Tulsidas, Surdas, Meerabai

6.2 FEATURES OF BHAKTI MOVEMENT

- Unity of God or one God though known by different names.
- Condemnation of rituals, ceremonies and blind faith.
- Rejection of idol worship.
- Surrender of oneself to God.
- Emphasised both **Nirguna and Saguna bhakti**.
- Salvation through Bhakti.
- Open-mindedness about religious matters.
- Rejected castes distinctions & believed in equality of all humans.
- Rebelled against the upper caste's domination and the Sanskrit language.
- Use of local or regional languages for Preaching.
- Creation of literature in the local language.

6.3 CAUSES OF THE EMERGENCE OF BHAKTI MOVEMENT

- Influence of Vaishnavism
- Rigid practices of the Hinduism
- Fear of spread of Islam
- Influence of Sufi sects
- Emergence of great reformers.

6.4 VEDANTA SAINTS AND THEIR CONTRIBUTION

Vedanta Saints	Contribution
Shankaracharya (788 – 820 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Birth: Kerala , Death- Uttarakhand (Kedarnath). ● Guru: Govinda Bhagavath pada. ● Integrated the essence of Buddhism in Hindu thought and interpreted the ancient Vedic religion. ● Consolidated the doctrine of Advaita Vedanta (Non-Dualism) God & created world is one and individual soul is not different from Brahman. ● Organiser of the Dashanami monastic order and unified the Shanmata tradition of worship.
Ramanujarcharya (1017-1137 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Birth: Tamilandu. ● Guru: Yadav Preksha. ● Propagator of Vishishtadvaita Vedanta or qualified monism: There exists a plurality and distinction between Âtman (soul) & Brahman (metaphysical, ultimate reality). ● Exponents of the Sri Vaishnavism tradition within Hinduism ● Literary works: Vedartha Sangraham, Sri Bhashyam, Gita Bhashyam.
Nimbarka	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● He was the contemporary of Ramanuja. ● He propounded the philosophy of bheda-abheda means the God, the soul and the world were identical yet distinct.
Madhvacharya (1238-1319 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● He was a critic of Adi Shankara's Advaita Vedanta and Ramanuja's Vishishtadvaita Vedanta teachings. ● He preached Dvaita or dualism, where divinity was separate from the human conscience/soul. ● Liberation: Only through the grace of God. ● Book: Anuvyakhyana.
Nathpanthis, Siddhas, and Yogis	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Criticised the ritual and other aspects of conventional religion and the social order, using simple, logical arguments. ● They advocated renunciation of the world. ● To them, the path to salvation lay in meditation on the formless god. ● To achieve this they advocated intense training of the mind and body through practices like yoga asanas, breathing exercises and meditation. ● These groups became particularly popular among low castes.

6.5 BHAKTI MOVEMENT SAINTS AND THEIR CONTRIBUTIONS

Saints	Contribution
Ramanada (14-15th century)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● He was a follower of Ramanuja. ● Founder of Sant-Parampara (literally, the tradition of bhakti saints) in north India. ● Substitute the worship of Rama in place of Krishna. ● He has 12 disciples: Avadhutas. ● Disciples: Kabir (a muslim weaver), Ravidas (cobbler), Bhagat Pipa, Sukhanand, Sena (barber) & Sudhana. ● Literary works: Gyan-lila and Yog-chintamani (Hindi), Vaisnava Mata Bhajan Bhaskara and Ramarcnapaddhati (Sanskrit). ● His verse is mentioned in Guru Granth Sahib.

<p>Kabir Das (1440-1510 AD)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Disciple of Ramananda. ● He was the first to reconcile Hinduism and Islam. ● He was a Nirguna saint and openly criticised the orthodox ideas of major religions like Hinduism and Islam. ● Denounced idol-worship, fastings, pilgrimages and religious superstitious beliefs, bathing in holy rivers, formal worship like nama. ● His poems are called Banis (utterances) or Dohe. His works are compiled in the famous book : Bijak. ● Kabir says: Ram Rahim is the same.
<p>Guru Nanak Dev (1469-1538 AD)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Birth: Talwandi Village & Death Kartarpur (Both are in Pakistan). ● Founder of Sikh religion & the first Guru of ten Sikh Gurus. Initially worked as an Accountant. ● Preached middle path & need of Guru for liberation. ● He composed hymnes and sang along with the help of an instrument called Rabab played by his attendant Mardana. ● Travelled across Asia including Mecca & Baghdad and spread the message of Ik Onkar - (One God). ● Opposes idol worship, pilgrimage and caste system, and emphasised purity of character and conduct. ● Called God as Waheguru that is shapeless, timeless, omnipresent and invisible (Nirgun Bhakti). ● He started Guru-Ka-langer (Community Kitchen) ● He promoted Tauhid-e-wazidi.
<p>Purandar Das (1483-1564 AD)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One of the chief founding-proponents of South Indian classical music (Carnatic Music). ● He is often quoted as Karnataka Sangeeta Pitamaha
<p>Dadu Dayal (1544-1603 AD)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Disciple of Kabir. ● He was a supporter of Hindu-Muslim unity. ● His followers were called Dadu Panthis.
<p>Chaitanya Mahaprabhu (1486-1533 AD)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Founder of modern Vaishnavism in Bengal. ● He was a Saguna and popularised Kirtans (religious songs) as a form of worshipping God. ● Popularised the chanting of Hare Rama, Hare Krishna. ● He made famous the practice of worshipping Radha and Krishna together. He gave the Achintya Bheda-Abheda philosophy. ● Didn't reject scriptures or idol worship called god as Hari. ● He wrote Siksastakam, a text in Sanskrit, where he elaborated his philosophy. ● He is the inspiration behind the world renowned ISKCON (International Society for Krishna Consciousness) that was founded in the 20th century.
<p>Sankaradeva (1499-1569 AD)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Spread the Bhakti cult in Assam. ● Translated Ramayana & Mahabharata into Assamese. ● He started the Ekasarana movement (Neo-Vaishnavite movement). He believed in the worship of Ekasarana (One God) in the form of Krishna. ● He is also called Krishna by different names like Hari, Narayan and Rama. ● His most famous work is Kirtana Ghosha, written in a simple language understood by the masses. ● He wrote in Assamese and Brajavali (mixture of Maithili and Assamese).

Vallabhacharya (1479-1531 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Exponent of Krishna cult. Founded philosophy of Shuddhadvaita (Pure Non dualism) and his philosophy is known as Pushti Marg. He worshipped Krishna under the title Srinathji.
Guru Ghasidas (1756-1836 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He was a famous saint from Chhattisgarh and he established the Satnami Community there. He strongly believed in equality and criticised the oppressive caste system. He was a monotheist and was against idol worship.
Surdas (1483-1563 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disciple of Vallabhacharya. He wrote Sursagar and Sursurvali. Showed intense devotion to Radha and Krishna. Regarded as the outstanding devotional poet in Brajbhasha.
Mirabai (1498-1546 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Staunch devotee of Lord Krishna. Composed number of songs and poems in honour of Krishna. She composed bhajans (short religious songs) which are sung even today.
Haridas (1478-1573 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A great musician saint who sang the glories of Lord Vishnu.
Tulsidas (1532-1623 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Depicted Rama as the incarnation. Wrote Ramcharitmanas.
Namdeva (1270-1350 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He was a devotee of Vithoba (Vishnu). Opposed Caste system. Only Nirguna saint in Maharashtra. He belongs to Varkari tradition.
Dnyaneshwar (1275-1296 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> He was the founder of the Bhakti Movement in Maharashtra in the 13th century. Wrote Dnyaneswari, a commentary on the Bhagavad-Gita. His other work is Amrutanubhav on Yoga and philosophy. He was a worshipper of Vithoba (Vitthala) who is considered a manifestation of Vishnu. He was a follower of Nath Yogi Tradition. He also drew inspiration from the Upanishads and Bhagavad Gita.
Eknath (1533-1599)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wrote commentary on verses of the Bhagavad-Gita. Devotee of Vithoba. He criticised the Caste distinctions.
Tukaram (1598-1650)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Contemporary of Maratha king Shivaji. Devotee of Vithal. He founded the Varkari sect. Man behind Maratha Nationalism. His teachings are contained in Abhangas.
Ram Das (1608-1681)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Author of Dasbodh. His teachings inspired Shivaji to establish an independent kingdom in Maharashtra.

6.6 VIRASHAIVISM/SHARANA MOVEMENT

- The Virashaiva movement **began in Karnataka** in the **mid- twelfth century**.
- It was initiated by **Basavanna** and other virashaivas like **Allama Prabhu** and **Akkamahadevi**.
- They fought for the **equality of all human beings** and against the Brahmanical ideas of caste and poor treatment of women.

- They were also **against religious rituals and idol worship**.
- **Challenged caste system, questioned the theory of rebirth**.
- Encouraged post puberty marriage & widow remarriage.
- Basavanna spread social awareness through his poetry, popularly known as **Vachanaas**.
- He established **Anubhava Mantapa (1st democratic parliament of the world)** - academy of mystics, saints and philosophers of the **Lingayath's** faith.

Varkari Tradition	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Varkari is a religious movement (sampradaya) within the bhakti spiritual tradition of Hinduism. It is geographically associated with the Indian states of Maharashtra and northern Karnataka. In the Marathi language of Maharashtra, Vari means 'pilgrimage' and a pilgrim is called a Varkari. 	
Vernacular Literature	
Hindi	Kabir, Surdas, Tulsidas, etc.
Marathi	Jnanadeva, Namdev, Eknath, etc.
Bengali	Chaitanya Mahaprabhu and Chandidas
Rajasthani (Braj)	Meerabai, Bihari, etc.
Punjabi	Guru Nanak
Assamese	Sankaradeva

6.7 IMPACT OF BHAKTI MOVEMENT

- The Bhakti saints were **social reformers** also. The evil practice of Sati and caste rigidities received some setbacks.
- **Women were encouraged to join kirtans**. Mirabai, Laila (Kashmir) and Andal composed verses that are popular even today.
- In place of Sanskrit, Bhakti saints preached through the medium of **local languages** which could be understood very easily. **Surdas** used the Brij dialect. **Tulsi Das** composed his works in **Awadhi**.



- **Sankaradeva** popularised **Assamese**, **Chaitanya** spreading their message in **Bengali**, **Mirabai** in **Hindi** and **Rajasthani**.
- **Kirtan at a Hindu Temple**, **Qawwali at a Dargah** (by Muslims), and **singing of Gurbani at a Gurdwara** are all derived from the Bhakti movement of medieval India.
- It popularised the **idea of equality & brotherhood**.
- Preached an **inclusive path to spiritual salvation**.
- Rulers adopted **liberal religious** policies under the impact of the Bhakti movement.

Prominent Sects
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Shri Sampradaya/Sect – Founder was Ramanuja Charya. • Rudra Sampradaya/Sect – Founder was Vishnu Swami • Sankanik Sampradaya/Sect – Founder was Nimbarkacharya. • RadhaBallabhi Sect is based on the Krishna cult - founded by Hari Vamsa in 1585.

6.8 BRAHMANICAL REACTION AGAINST BHAKTI MOVEMENT

- The sentiments of the **orthodox Hindus** were echoed by **Raghunandan of Navadwipa** (Nadia in Bengal). He asserted that only brahmanas had the right to read scriptures and he was the influential writer on the Dharmashastras.
- **Ram Das** from **Maharashtra** (considered as spiritual guru by Shivaji) put forward a philosophy of activism.

PREVIOUS YEAR QUESTION

1. There was a common feature among all the Bhakti saints, that they [47th B.P.S.C. (Pre)2005]
(a) He wrote his speech in the same language which his devotees understood.
 (b) Rejected the authority of the priestly class.
 (c) Women were encouraged to go to the temple.
 (d) Encouraged idolatry.

7.1 INTRODUCTION

- In the beginning of **12th century AD**, some religious people in **Persia** turned to asceticism due to the increasing materialism of the Caliphate. They came to be called the '**Sufis**'.
- In India, Sufi movement **began in 1300 A.D & came to South India in the 15th century**.
- Sufism is the **mystical arm of Islam**. Sufis represent the inner side of the Islam creed (**Tasawwuf**).
- **Sufism (tasawwuf)** is the name given to **mysticism in Islam**.
- **Sufi means wool**: People who wear long woolen clothes are called sufis.
- It was a **liberal reform movement within Islam**. It stressed the elements of love and devotion as an effective means of the realisation of God.
- It is based on the **Pir-Murid (Teacher-student) relationship**.
- Sufism sprang from the doctrine of **Wahdat-ul-wajood** (unity of being) propounded by **Ibn-ul-Arabi** (1165-1240 AD).
- Early Sufi saints - **Rabia, Mansur bin hallal**.
- **Sufi orders** are broadly **divided in two** :
 1. **Ba-sara**: Those followed Islamic law.
 2. **Be-shara**: who did not follow Islamic law.
- In Sufism, **self-discipline** was considered an essential condition to gain knowledge of God. While orthodox Muslims emphasise external conduct, the **Sufis lay stress on inner purity**.
- Sufism entered India between 11th and 12th centuries. **Al-Hujwari was first Sufis who settled in India** and died in 1089 AD who is popularly known as **Data Ganj Naksh** (Distributor of unlimited treasure).
- **Multan and Punjab were the early centres** and later on, it spread to Kashmir, Bihar, Bengal and the Deccan.

7.2 ESSENTIAL CHARACTERISTICS OF SUFISM

- **Fana**: Spiritual merger of devotee with Allah
- **Insan-e-kamil**: Perfect human with all good virtues
- **Zikr-tauba**: Remembrance of god all the time(zikr)

- **Wahdatul-wajood**: One god for the entire universe; unity of god and being.
- **Sama**: Spiritual dance and music to promote their concepts, though music is un-Islamic.

7.3 STAGES OF SUFISM

Stage	Period	Character
1st Stage: Khanqah	10th century	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Also called the age of Golden Mysticism
2nd Stage: Tariqa	11-14th century	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When Sufism was being institutionalised and traditions and symbols started being attached to it.
3rd Stage: Tarifa	15th century onwards	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The stage when Sufism became a popular movement.

7.4 FEATURES OF SUFISM

- The Sufis **rejected the elaborate rituals and codes of behaviour demanded** by Muslim religious scholars.
- They believed that God is '**Mashuq**' and Sufis are the Ashiqs.
- Sufism was **divided into 12 orders (Silsila) and each under a mystic Sufi saint of which four most popular ones were Chistis, Suhrawardis, Qadiriya and Naqshbandis**.
- Silsila is the continuous **link between Murshid** (teacher) and **Murid** (student). They lived in **Khanqah (hospice) of worship**.
- Names of Silsila were **based on the names of founding figures** E.g. Qadri Silsila based on the name of Shaikh Abdul Qadri & Place of origin E.g. Chishti (place in Afghanistan).
- Sufism took roots in **both rural and urban areas** and exercised a deep social, political and cultural influence on the masses.

- Sufism believes that **Devotion** is more important than **Fast** (Roza) or **Prayer** (Namaz).
- Sufism **discards the caste system**.
- Sufism has **adapted extensively from the Vedanta school** of the Hindu philosophy.
- **The cardinal doctrines of Sufism include:** Complete surrender to the will of God; Annihilation of the self; Becoming a perfect person.
- These three cardinal principles altogether make the **Doctrine of Fana** which means annihilation of human attributes through Union with God.
- In Sufism, a perfect being is also called a **Wali (saint)**, a word that literally means **sincere friend**.

7.5 SUFISM AND MUSIC

- Sufism encourages music as a way of deepening one's relation with God, remembering God by **Zikr** (reciting name) **Sama** (performance of **mystical music**).
- Sufis too composed poems and a rich literature in prose, including anecdotes and fables, The most notable writer of this period was **Amir Khusrau** the **follower** of **Nizamuddin Auliya**.
- Sufi saints are credited with the **invention of sitar and tabla**.
- It contributed to the **evolution of classical music**.
- **Khayal style** owes a lot to sufism.
- **Amir Khusro was a disciple of Nizamuddin Auliya**. He gives a unique form to **sama**.
- **Khusrau** is sometimes referred to as the **Parrot of India**. His songs are sung in several dargahs across the country. **Khusrau** is **regarded** as the **Father of Qawwali**.

7.6 SILSILAS/ORDERS OF SUFIS

Chisti	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Founder: Khwaja Abdul Chisti. • Originated in Persia and Central Asia. • Moinuddin Chishti introduced the Chisti order in India. • Baba Farid (Fariddudin Ganjshakar) was a disciple of Moinuddin & his poems included in Guru Granth Sahib. • Nizamuddin Auliya was called sidh/perfect due to yogi breathing exercises. • Sama was mostly associated with Chisti. • Belong to Ba sharia.
---------------	---

Suhrawardi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Founder: Shaikh Shihabuddin Suhrawardi. • Main centre was Multan. • Saints of this order were also rich and held important government positions. • Associated with Delhi Sultanate. • A famous saint is Bahauddin Zakaria. • Belong to Ba-sharia.
Nakshabandi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Founder: Baha-ud-Din Naqshband Bukhari • Khwaja pir mohammad introduced Nakshabadi order in India during Akbar reign. • Orthodox Sect.
Qadri Silsilah	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Qadri/Qadiriyya silsilah was famous in Punjab and was founded by Shaikh Abdul Qadir Jilani of Baghdad.

7.7 SIKHISM IN BIHAR

Sikhism in Bihar

- Shri Gobind Singh Ji, the tenth Guru of the Sikhs, was born in Bihar.
- Gaya, Rajgir, Patna, Munger, Bhagalpur, Kahalgaon etc. places of Bihar were visited by Guru Nanak Dev, the originator of Sikhism. Its discussion is found in the traditions of the Sikhs.
- Guru Nanak Dev preached religion in these areas and also made disciples.
- Sri Tegh Bahadur, the ninth Guru of the Sikhs, arrived in Bihar in the second half of the seventeenth century. They reached Patna via Sasaram and Gaya.
- By that time there were many Sikhs in Patna and the Guru's followers gave him a grand welcome.
- Guru Tegh Bahadur had to leave for Assam during his stay in Patna, where he had to provide assistance to the Rajput general of Emperor Aurangzeb.
- At the time of his departure from Patna, he left his wife Gujari Devi with brother Kripal Chandra ji as she was about to become a mother.
- Guru Gobind Singh ji was born here in Patna on 26 December 1666, his childhood name was Gobind Rai.
- Guru Gobind Singh ji's attachment to military life was inherited from his grandfather Guru Hargovind Singh.
- At the age of four and a half, on the orders of his father, Guru Gobind Singh Ji left Patna and went to Anandpur in Punjab.

- After assuming the post of Guru, he sent his Masanads to the areas of Bihar.
- After the death of Guru Gobind Singh Ji in 1708, the Sikhs of Bihar always cooperated with his wife, Mata Sahiba Devi.
- Between 1717 and 1730, these followers made regular arrangements to send money and other support materials to his service.
- The birthplace of Guru Gobind Singh in Patna is one of the most important religious places for the Sikhs. Takht Shri Harimandir Ji, Patna Sahib is considered to be the second holiest Takht.
- Takht Shri Harimandir Ji, Patna Sahib is one of the five Peeths of the Sikh temporal power and was established by the three Sikh Gurus.

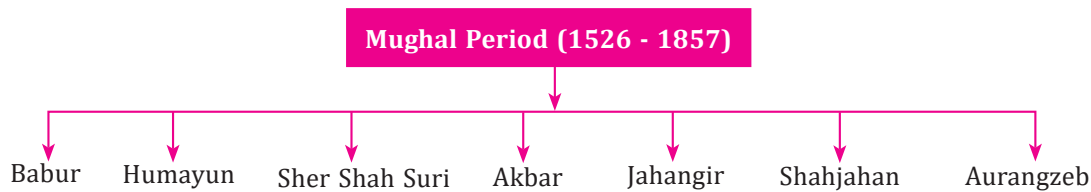
PREVIOUS YEAR QUESTIONS

1. Which Sikh Guru was born in Patna? [B.P.S.C. (Pre)2015]
 (a) Nanak
 (c) Hargovind
 (b) Tegh Bahadur
(d) Govind Singh
2. Nizamuddin Auliya refused to meet which of the following Sultan? [44th B.P.S.C. (Pre)2000]
 (a) Jalaluddin Khilji
(b) Alauddin Khilji
 (c) Ghiyasuddin Tughlaq
 (d) Muhammad bin Tughlaq



8.1 INTRODUCTION

- **Babur: Founder of the Mughal Empire** in India was related to **Timur** from his **father's side** and to **Chengiz Khan** **through his mother**.
- Babur succeeded his father as the **ruler of Farghana** (Uzbekistan), but soon lost his kingdom.
- Financial difficulties, apprehension of the Uzbek attack on Kabul and invitation of Rana Sanga to invade India forced Babur to look towards India.



8.2 BABUR (1526-1530 AD)

- **First Battle of Panipat (1526):** Babur decisively **defeated Ibrahim Lodhi**. It Replaced the Lodhi and established the Mughal era in India.
- **Reasons for Babur's victory:** Alternatively resting one wing of Army, Services of two ottoman master gunners - **Ustad Ali & Mustafa**, Use of Gunpowder, scientific use of cavalry & artillery tactics - tulughma and the araba, effective use of Cannons.
- **Battle of Khanwa (1527):** Babur **defeated Rana Sangha** and assumed the title of **Ghazi**.
- **Battle of Chanderi (1528):** **Medini Rai was defeated** and with this resistance across Rajputana was completely shattered.
- **Battle of Ghagra (1529):** Babur **defeated Mahmud Lodhi** who aspired to the throne of Delhi.
- **Significance of Babur's Advent into India:**
 1. **Kabul and Gandhar** became integral parts of the Mughal Empire.
 2. Security from External invasions for almost 200 years.
 3. Babur **popularised gunpowder**, cavalry and artillery in India. (Gunpowder used earlier in India, but Babur popularised its use).
 4. Strengthened India's foreign trade.
 5. Proclaimed himself as **Emperor of Hindustan**.
 6. Arrival of Babur into India led to the establishment of the **Timurid dynasty** in the region.
 7. Babur introduced a **new mode of warfare** in India.
 8. Defeating Sanga & Lodhi he smashed the balance of power and laid the foundation for all India empire.
 9. He had assumed the title of **Padshah**.
 10. Babur introduced **Charbagh** and symmetrically laid out gardens.
 11. Built **mosques at Panipat and Sambhal** in Rohilkhand.
 12. Babur wrote **Tuzuk-I-Baburi (Babarnama) & Masnavi**.
 13. Babur was a **great scholar** in Arabic & Persian languages

8.3 HUMAYUN (1530-1540 & 1555-1556 AD)

- Humayun **succeeded Babur** in 1530.
- He had to deal with the rapid growth of power of the Afghans and Bahadur shah of Gujarat.
- At the **Battle of Chausa (1539) & Battle of Kanauj (1540)**, Sher Shah defeated Humayun and forced him to flee India.
- For sometimes he took shelter at the Iranian king. In 1555, following the breakup of Suri Empire he recaptured Delhi but died next year.
- Humayun built a **new city at Delhi** which he named **Dinpanah**.
- **Mosques: Jamali mosque and mosque of Isa Khan** at Delhi.

- Humayun's sister, **Gul Badan Begum**, wrote **Humayun-Nama**.
- The **foundation for the Mughal painting was laid by Humayun** when he was staying in Persia.
- He brought with him **two painters – Mir Sayyid Ali and Abdal Samad to India**, who became famous during Akbar's reign.
- His widow **Hamida Benu Begum** built **Humayun's tomb** (UNESCO site).

8.4 AFGHAN RULE IN BIHAR

Introduction

- Afghan tribes like Nuhani and Karnani established their control over a large part of Bihar during the period between 1522-74.
- Karakar was based in Hajipur and asserted himself against the rulers of Delhi and Bengal.

Rise of Nuhani Dynasty

- The rise of this dynasty is related to the Sharqi-Lodi conflict.
- Sikandar Lodi suppressed the rebellion of his brother "Barbak Shah of Jaunpur". Hussain Shah of the Sharqi dynasty took refuge in Biharsharif and fled to Bengal.
- Because of this Sikandar Lodi attacked Bihar. After the attack the zamindars of Tirhut and Saran surrendered.
- A treaty was signed with Bengal and Munger was demarcated as the boundary between the two kingdoms.
- For better control of the Sultans of Delhi, Sikandar Lodi appointed "Daria Khan Nuhani" as the caretaker and administrator of Bihar.

Daria Khan Nuhani

- In fact he became an independent ruler of Bihar and his son formally established the short-lived Nuhani Kingdom of Bihar.
- It ruled Bihar from 1495 AD to 1522 AD and remained loyal to Sikandar Lodi, however, it took an independent position during the reign of Ibrahim Lodi.

Bahar Khan Nuhani

- He was the son of Darya Khan Nuhani and ascended the throne of Bihar in 1522 AD after the death of his father.
- He declared his independence and established a short lived Nuhani dynasty in Bihar.
- He assumed the title of "Sultan Mohammed" and gathered an army of one lakh soldiers.

Invasion of Ibrahim Lodhi

- Ibrahim Lodhi sent an army against Bahar Khan under the Hussain formuli. The Delhi army was defeated only after the initial phase of fighting.

- In addition, Ibrahim Lodi was defeated in the First Battle of Panipat in 1526.
- Due to this the Nuhani kingdom expanded from Bihar to Kannauj.

Battle of Ghaghra: 1527 AD

- Bahar Khan Nuhani was defeated by Babur in the "Battle of Ghaghra" in 1527 and had to accept Babur's submission.
- Bahar Khan Nuhani died in 1528 AD. After his death, his minor son "Jalal Khan" was sworn in as emperor under the guardianship of Farid Khan or Sher Khan.
- Farid Khan defeated the invasion of Bengal and assumed the title of "Hazrat-e-Ala".

Sur Dynesty

Introduction

- Bihar saw a glorious period of 6 years during the rule of Sher Shah Suri. He is considered the representative of Afghan power in India.

Sher Shah Suri

- Childhood Name: Farid
- Year of Birth: Historians are not unanimous about his year of birth. According to Dr. Kanungo, he was born in 1486 AD in Narnaul of Hisar-Firoza.
- His father "Hasan Khan Sur" was a Jagirdar of Sasaram in Bihar.

Rise of Sher Shah Suri

- Bahar Khan Nuhani first appointed "Farid" as Jagirdar of Sasaram.
- After the death of Bahar Khan, Sher Shah became the guardian of his minor son "Jalal Khan" and his queen Dudu left the administration of the state completely in the hands of Sher Shah.
- This created jealousy among the Nuhani nobles towards Sher Shah and they started thinking of killing him.
- Later "Jalal Khan" went to Bengal to seek help from "Nusrat Shah", the ruler of Bengal, and Nusrat Shah appointed Qutb Khan's son Ibrahim to fight Sher Shah.
- **Battle of Surajgarh [Munger], 1534 AD: Sher Shah defeated the Bengal army led by Mahmud Shah in this battle.**
- Significance of the battle: It is considered to be one of the most decisive battles in mediaeval Indian history and a turning point in Sher Shah's career.
- After this battle, Sher Shah assumed the title of "Hazrat-i-Ala" and virtually became the Sarvesarva of Bihar.

- Chunar Fort: Sher Shah obtained the strategic fort of Chunar by marrying Lad Malika, the widow of Taj Khan Sarangkhani.

Sher Shah and Humayun

- Sher Shah's victory and his control over Bihar and Bengal attracted the attention of the Mughal ruler Humayun.
- At this time Humayun was busy suppressing Mirza's rebellion and Bahadur Shah's rebellion in Gujarat.
- Sher Shah saw this opportunity to consolidate his power and territorial possessions and conquered the Gaur region of Bengal.
- Considering the possible threat from Sher Shah, Humayun moved east and captured Chunar and advanced towards Gaur.
- Sher Shah was a shrewd administrator and he avoided direct confrontation with Humayun at this time and allowed the Mughal army to advance towards Bengal without any opposition.
- He shifted the treasury of Bengal to Rohtas in Bihar.
- When the Mughal army reached Bengal, he used this opportunity to besiege Chunar and capture Varanasi and further sent an army to capture Kannauj.

Battle of Chausa: 25 June 1539 AD (Near Buxar)

- One side: Humayun
- Second side: Sher Shah Suri
- **Result: Humayun was defeated.**
- **Incidents during the war:** During the war, Humayun's horse drowned in the river Ganga and Karmanasha, his life was saved by a Bhishti Nizam who filled water, which Humayun later made a king for a day. This Nizam introduced the leather currency/coin symbolically during his one day reign.
- **After the battle of Chausa, Sher Khan assumed the title of Sher Shah and marched towards Agra.**

Battle of Kannauj/Bilgram (17 May 1540 AD)

- One side: Humayun
- Second side: Sher Khan / Sher Shah Suri
- Result: Humayun's defeat
- After the defeat in the war, Humayun fled to Iran after saving his life.
- Sher Shah established the "Second Afghan Empire" in place of the Mughal power in 1540 AD, which lasted till 1555 AD.

Sher Shah after Humayun

- Sher Shah successfully suppressed Khizr Khan's rebellion in Bengal in 1541.

- In 1542 AD, Sher Shah defeated Mallu Khan and captured Malwa and annexed the fort of Gwalior to his kingdom.
- In 1543, Sher Shah invaded Raisin in central India and treacherously killed its ruler Puranmal Chauhan.
- In 1544, Sher Shah launched an attack against Maldev Rathor, the ruler of Marwar. In this war, two Rajput soldiers of Marwar, Jayanta and Kuppa had freed sixes from the Afghan army. But Sher Shah deceived Maldev's soldiers against him and established control over Marwar as well.
- During this war, Sher Shah had said that "I had given almost the whole of India for a handful of millet."
- Sher Shah's last campaign was the campaign of Kalinjar in 1545. At this time the ruler of Kalinjar was Kirat Singh.
- During the Kalinjar war, Sher Shah died due to using a firearm called Ukka.
- **After the death of Sher Shah, his second son Jalal Khan became the ruler and ruled till 1554 AD.**

Sher Shah's Administration

- At the time of Sher Shah, the provinces were known as Sarkars.
- Sher Shah had divided his entire empire into 47 sarkars (provinces), out of which only Bengal was divided into 19 sarkars.
- Sher Shah appointed an officer named "Amir-i-Bengal" to control the government in Bengal.

Sher Shah's Administration and Important Departments

Central Administration	Head [chief]
Diwan-i-Wazarat	It was headed by the wazir and was in charge of revenue and finance.
Diwan-i-Arz	It was a secretariat headed by Dabir.
Diwan-e-Insha	It was a religious department headed by a Sadr.
Diwan-i-Kazi	This was the law department headed by a Qazi.

- Sher Shah introduced a "government unit" [district] for the first time in history under Shikdar-i-Shikarana.

Administrative unit	Head
Iqta [province]	Hakim and Amin
Sarkara [District]	Shiqdar-e-Shikdaran
Pargana [Taluka]	Shiqdar and Munsif
Gram [village]	Muqaddam and Amil

Sher Shah's Land Revenue System

- Shershah's revenue system was mainly of "ryotwari settlement system" in which direct relation with farmers was established.
- **Sher Shah had determined 3 categories of land on the basis of production :- Good land, medium land and low land.**
- **Sher Shah took one-third of the land revenue yield, but this rate of land revenue was taken one-fourth from the area called Multan.**
- **Sher Shah got the land measured under the direction of Ahmad Khan.**
- **Sher Shah** used "Sikandari Gaj" and "Sun ki Dandi" (rope) for the measurement of land.
- **Sher Shah** started 'kabuliyat' and 'Patta Pratha'.
- Sher Shah introduced "Rai" (a list of crop rates) to determine the land tax.
- In addition to the land revenue, Sher Shah took a tax called "Jaribana" from the farmers as survey fee and "Muhsilana" as tax collection fee.
- Sher Shah got 1700 sarais built and appointed an officer named "Shikdar" to look after them.
- Sher Shah introduced a coin called "silver rupee" of 178 grains and "copper daam" of 380 grains.
- Sher Shah's name was written on the coins of Sher Shah in Arabic or Devanagari script.
- Sher Shah had established 23 mints.
- Sher Shah renamed Pataliputra as Patna in 1541.
- **Sher Shah built an old fort at Dinpanah Nagar in Delhi.**
- Sher Shah established a city named Rohtasgarh.
- **Sher Shah built his own tomb at Sasaram.**
- Sher Shah established a city named Shersur in place of Kannauj.
- Sher Shah built a mosque named Qila-i-Kuhna in Delhi.
- Sher Shah's judicial system was very harsh which included imprisonment, beating with whips, mutilation and fine etc.

Bihar after Sher Shah

- Even after the re-establishment of Mughal rule in Delhi, Bihar remained under the control of the Afghans.
- Taj Khan Karrani made Biharsharif his capital and established a new Afghan state.
- **Sulaiman Karrani ruled from 1565-72 and accepted the authority of the Mughal Emperor Akbar.**

Chero Dynasty

Introduction

- The Chero emerged as a tribal kingdom after the decline of the Pala dynasty in Bihar.

About Dynasty

- The Chero established their powerful kingdom in the districts of Bhojpur, Saran, Champaran, Muzaffarpur and Palamu.
- They ruled for about 300 years and had four territories in Shahabad district.
- Kumkumchand Jharap was the chieftain of the Cheras of Bhojpur between 1587-1607 and he followed the Ujjainis of Bhojpur.
- Clash between Chero and Ujjainis: A decisive battle was fought between Chero and Ujjaini in 1611 AD in which the Ujjainis under the leadership of Narayan Mal defeated Chero.
- Jagdishpur Fair: It was started by Phoolchand.
- **Medini Rai was the most famous ruler of the Cheras and his territory extended to Gaya, Daudnagar and Arwal.**
- He was succeeded by his son Pratap Rai, during whose reign a series of Mughal invasions took place and the Chero were finally incorporated into the Mughal Empire.

Ujjaini Dynast

Background

- Alauddin Khilji conquered "Dhar" [Malwa]. Bhojraj, who was the Rajput king of Dhar, moved towards Bihar after his defeat.
- He moved to Shahabad and Palamu with his son Devraj and other Rajput followers and took refuge under the Chero king, "Raja Mukund".

About Dynasty:

- They were called Ujjaini Rajputs. He was given the jagir of the South Ganga plain by the Chero kings.
- Bhojraj was killed by Sahasbal, the son of King Mukund.
- To avenge his father's death, Devaraja killed Sahasbal in 1324 and annexed a large part of the Chero kingdom.
- Devraj established "Bhojpur". He was called Santan Singh in Bhojpur.
- In 1611 AD, with the help of the Mughal rulers, he won a decisive battle against the Cheras.
- Later, Raja Narayan Singh recovered the glory of Ujjaini and made Buxar his capital.
- They controlled Buxar, Jagdishpur and Dumraon until the arrival of the British.

8.5 AKBAR (1556-1605 AD)

- He succeeded the throne after his father Humayun's death.
- In 1556, in the **second battle of Panipat**, he defeated **Hemu** (Sur's wazir).

- Between 1556-60, **Akbar ruled under Bairam Khan's regency**. Bairam became the Wakil of the kingdom with the title of **Khan-i-Khanam**.
- **Battle of Haldighati (1576)**: Akbar defeated Rana Pratap following most of the Rajput rulers accepted Akbar's suzerainty.
- The Mughal army was led by **Man Singh**.
- **Akbar defeated Gujarat ruler Muzaffar Shah**. To commemorate this victory, he **built Buland Darwaza at Fatehpur Sikri**.
- Akbar gradually enlarged the Mughal Empire to include much of the Indian subcontinent.

Administration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Empire was divided into subas (provinces), governed by a subadar who carried out both political and military functions. ● Each suba had officials: Diwan, Bakshi, Sadr, Qazi etc. ● Another division of the empire: Jagir (allotted to nobles & members of royal family), Khalisa (tract reserved for royal exchequer), Inam (given to religious leaders, half of it was uncultivated).
Local Govt	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Pargana & Sarkar were subdivisions of provinces. ● Fauzdar: Charge of law & order, ● Amalguzar: land assessment and revenue collection were chief officers of Sarkar.
Land Revenue Administration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● With the help of Raja Todar Mal, Akbar experimented on the land revenue administration; it was the Zabti or Bandobast system. ● Dahsala System: The revenue was fixed on the average yield of land measured on the basis of previous ten years. It was an improved version of Zabti. ● Battai/Gholla-Bakshi system: Produce divided between state & peasants in fixed proportion. Peasants were given a choice between Battai & Dahsala. ● Kankut: Revenue on the basis of what peasants had been paying in the past. ● Categorization of land: Polaj (cultivated every year), Parati (once in two years), Chachar (once in three or four years) and Banjar (once in five or more years). ● Qanungos were hereditary holders of land and Karoris were officers appointed all over North India. They had the responsibility of collecting dams (rupees).
Mansabdari System	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Akbar introduced the Mansabdari system in his administration. Under this system every officer was assigned a rank (Mansab). ● Word Mansabdar used for all but it had 3 scale gradation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Mansabdar (5000 zat / below it) 2. Amir (between 500-2500 zat) 3. Amir-i-Umda (above 2500 zat) ● The ranks were divided into two: Zat and Sawar. ● Zat fixed the personal status & salary of a person. ● Sawar rank indicated the number of Sawars had to be maintained by person. Every Sawar had to maintain at least two horses. ● The Mansab rank was not hereditary & Mansabdar were paid by assigning jagir.
Religious Policy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Abolished jizya, pilgrimage and forcible conversion of prisoners of wars. ● He built Ibadat Khana (House of Worship) at Fatehpur sikri for religious discussion. ● He advocated the idea of Sulh-i kul or universal peace, idea of tolerance which did not discriminate between the people of different religions. ● Abul Fazl helped Akbar in framing a vision of governance around this idea of Sulh-i-kul. This principle of governance was followed by Jahangir and Shah Jahan as well. ● In 1582, he promulgated a new religion called Din-e-Ilahi or Divine Faith. It believes in one God. It contained the good points of all religions. It had only fifteen followers including Birbal. Akbar did not compel anyone to his new faith. ● Jharoka Darshan was introduced by Akbar with the objective of broadening the acceptance of imperial authority as part of popular faith. ● Muhammad Hussain was Akbar's favorite Calligrapher. He was proficient in Nastaliq – the fluid style with long horizontal strokes. ● Akbar honored him with Zarin-i-Kalam (golden pen).

Coinage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Introduced gold coins called Ashrafi (mohurs). He also began dating his coins as per a new Illahi era, which replaced the earlier Hijri era. Akbar introduced the practice of inscribing Persian poetry praising the ruler on coins.
Akbar's Navranas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Abul Fazl: Wrote Ain-i-Akbari and Akbar Nama. Abdul Rahim Khan-I-Khana: Great poet, Translated Baburnama into Turkish. Birbal: a Hindu advisor and main commander (mukhya senapati) of the army in the court. Akbar gave him the title Raja Birbal. Mirza Aziz Koka: Also known as Kotaltash, was the foster brother of Akbar built by Mirza Aziz Koka as a mausoleum for himself, at the time of Jahangir's reign Faizi: Translated Lilavati into Persian & under his supervision Mahabharata was translated into Persian language. Raja Man Singh: Was a mansabdar. Raja Todar Mal: Finance Minister. Akbar bestowed on him the title of Diwan-i-Ashraf. Fakir Aziao-Din: One of the Chief advisors of Akbar Tansen: Musician, Hindu of Gwalior. He served to King Ramachandra, who gave him the title of Tansen. Akbar gave him the title of Mian.
Art	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Haznama, consisting of 1200 paintings, belonged to his reign. The European style of painting was introduced by Portuguese priests in his court. Jaswant & Daswan were famous painters in his court. Persian poets in his court: Abu Fazl and his brother Abul Faizi, Tarikh Alfi, Utbi and Nazir. Hindi poets in his court: Tulsidas wrote Ramcharitmanas. Akbar commissioned the translation of many Sanskrit works into Persian. A Maktab Khana or translation bureau was also established at Fatehpur Sikri for this purpose. The Razmnama is the Persian translation of the Mahabharata. The Akbar period was popularly known as the renaissance of Persian literature.
Architecture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Palace-cum-fort complex at Fatehpur Sikri (City of Victory): Many buildings in Gujarati and Bengali styles are found in this complex. The Gujarati style was probably built for his Rajput wives. Akbar built Diwan-i-am (hall of public audience), Diwan-i-Khas (private hall). The most magnificent building in it is the Jama Masjid and the gateway to it called Buland Darwaza or the Lofty Gate, Shaik Saleem chisti dargah. Other important buildings at Fatepur Sikri are Jodha Bai's palace and Panch Mahal with five storeys. During Akbar's reign, Humayun's tomb was built in Delhi and it had a massive dome of marble. It may be considered the precursor of the Taj Mahal. Akbar's tomb at Sikandra near Agra was completed by Jahangir. He built Agra Fort in red sandstone and also Jahangiri Mahal in it according to Hindu design.

8.6 JAHANGIR (1605-1627)

- When Akbar died, **Prince Salim** succeeded with the **title Jahangir** (Conqueror of World) in **1605**.
- British Visited Machilipatnam during his reign. **Captain Hawkins and Thomas Roe** visited his court. Thomas Roe got the **Farman for setting up an English factory at Surat**. Farman was sealed by Shah Jahan.
- His wife Nurjaha had influence over the state affairs.
- Jahangir erected **Zanjir-i-adal at Agra fort** for the seekers of royal justice.

- Autobiography: **Tuzuk-i-Jahangiri** in Persian.
- Introduction of the **Du-Aspah-Sih-Aspah** system. It was **modified to Mansabdari**. Nobles were allowed to maintain a large number of troops without raising their zat ranks.

Art and Architecture

- Started **decorating walls with floral designs made of semi-precious stones (Pietra Dura)** during his reign.
- Built **Moti Masjid at Lahore**. Laid Shalimar and Nishant gardens in Kashmir.
- The use of **Halo or Divine lights** behind the king's head started under him.

8.7 SHAHJAHAN (1628-1658 AD)

- Succeeded Jahangir and ascended the throne in 1628.
- Three years after accession, his beloved wife **Mumtaz Mahal** died in 1631.
- His **Deccan policy** was more successful. He defeated the forces of **Ahmadnagar** and annexed it. **Both Bijapur and Golconda signed a treaty with the emperor.**
- He **defeated the Portuguese** in 1632.
- The court, army and household **moved from Agra** to the newly completed imperial **capital, Shahjahanabad**. It was a new addition to the old residential city of Delhi, with the **Red Fort, the Jama Masjid, Chandni Chowk** etc.
- **Salutation:** Under Shah Jahan it was **chahar taslim and zaminbos** (kissing the ground).
- During his reign a war of succession among his sons broke out.
- **Battle of Dharmat, Battle of Samugarh, Battle of Khajwa, and Battle of Deorai** took place & Finally Aurangzeb emerged victorious.
- His court historian Abdul Hameed Lohiri wrote **Badshahnama**.
- **Shah Jahan Nama** is **written** by **Inayat Khan**. His son translated **Bhagavad Gita** and **Upanishads** into **Persian language**.
- **Badshahanama** was **written** by **Abdul Hamid Lahori** who lived in his court.

Architecture Developments

- Built **Taj Mahal** in 1632-33 to perpetuate memories of his wife, Mumtaz Mahal.
- **Moti Masjid** (entirely of white marble), **Sheesh Mahal** and **Musamman Burj** at Agra.
- **Red Fort** with its **Rang Mahal, Diwan-i-Am and Diwan- i-Khas** at Delhi.
- **Jama Masjid** in Delhi (red stone), **Shalimar Bagh** in Lahore and city of **Shahjahanabad**.
- The **pietra dura method** was used on a large scale in the **Taj Mahal** by Shah Jahan.

8.8 AURANGZEB (1658-1707 AD)

- **The Masir-i-Alamgiri** book written by **Mustaid Khan** throws light on Aurangzeb's rule.

- He **assumed the title Alamgir**, World Conqueror. He was also called **Zinda Pir**.
- During his reign, the Mughal Empire reached its greatest extent, ruling over nearly the entire Indian subcontinent.
- He **annexed Bijapur (1686) & Golkonda (1687)** and extended the Mughal Empire further south.
- He faced a **tough fight from Shivaji Maharaj** – Maratha king who had carved out an independent state.
- **Discontinued** Official departments of history.
- He issued **Zawabit-i-Alamgir** (decrees of Aurangzeb) and appointed **Muhtasibs** to **enforce moral codes** given under it.
- **Drinking was prohibited** & cultivation and use of bhang and other drugs were banned. Although he was proficient in playing Veena, **Aurangzeb forbade music in the court.**
- He **discontinued the practice of Jarokha darshan**.
- He also **discontinued the celebration of Dasara & Navroz** and royal astronomers and astrologers were also dismissed from service.
- **Bibi Ka Maqbara (replica of Taj Mahal) at Aurangabad, Moti Masjid** (Near Red fort, Delhi) by Aurangzeb was commission in 1660 by the Mughal Emperor Aurangzeb's son prince Azim Shah.
- Initially Aurangzeb banned the construction of new Hindu temples and repair of old temples. Then he **began a policy of destroying Hindu temples.**
- In 1679, he **reimposed Jizya and pilgrim tax**.
- He was also **not tolerant of other Muslim sects**. The celebration of **Muharram** was stopped.
- He executed the **ninth Sikh Guru Teg Bahadur**.
- It had also resulted in the **rebellions of the Jats of Mathura** and the **Satnamis of Mewar**. Therefore, **Aurangzeb was held responsible for the decline of the Mughal.**
- In the **Mansabdari System** he created an **additional rank Mashrut** (conditional), Added one deduction called **Khurak-i- dawwab** towards meeting the cost for feed of animals.
- Aurangzeb **appointed Rajputs to high positions**, and under him the Marathas accounted for a sizable number within the body of officers.
- **Miraz Mohammad Qasim** wrote **Alamgirnama**.
- His religious policy was responsible for turning the Rajputs, the Marathas and Sikhs into the enemies of the Mughal Empire.

8.9 SUCCESSORS OF AURANGZEB

Important Rulers	Important Events
Muazzam (Bahadur Shah I) (1707-1712)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He was more tolerant towards Hindu. • He never abolished Jizya but didn't collect the tax strictly. • He Granted Marathas Sardeshmukhi of Deccan, but failed to grant Chauth. • Mughal historians like Khafi khan gave him the title of Shah-i-Bekhabar.

Jahandar Shah (1712-1713)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● He introduced Ijarah (Revenue Farming). ● He Became emperor with help of Zulfikhar Khan (later became PM). ● He tried to establish friendly relations with Maratha and Rajputs and hence abolished Jizya, granted Sardeshmukhi and Chauth of Deccan to Shahu and accorded title of Mirza Raja Sawai to Jai Singh of Amber and title of Maharaja to Ajit Singh.
Farrukh Siyar (1713-1719)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Puppet of Sayyid Brothers – Abdula Khan & Hussain Ali (known as kingmakers) ● Policy of religious tolerance – abolished Jizya & pilgrimage tax. ● He Gave Farman to the British in 1717. ● He was Dethroned by Sayyid Brothers
Rafi-ud-Darajat Muhammad Shah Rangeela (1719-1748)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Ruled for the shortest period of time among the Mughals ● Autonomous states emerged under his reign: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Nizam-ul-Mulk :Deccan 2. Saadat Khan : Awadh 3. Murshid Quli Khan: Bengal, Bihar and Orissa ● Nadir Shah invaded India and looted Delhi. He also took away the famous Kohinoor Diamond. ● Became king with help of Sayyid Brothers later he killed them with help of Nizam-ul-Mulk. ● Defeated by Nadir Shah in the Battle of Karnal. ● Ahmad Shah Abdali also raided Delhi for the first time during his reign.
Ahmad Shah (1748-1754)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Mohd. Shah Rangeela's only son. ● He was an incompetent ruler. Left the state affairs in the hands of Udham Bai. She was given the title of Qibla-i-Alam.
Alamgir II (1754-1759)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Battle of Plassey (1757) was fought during his reign.
Shah Alam II/Aligauhar (1759-1806)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Third Battle of Panipat fought between Marathas and Ahmad Shah Abdali during his reign. ● Participated in the Battle of Buxar (1764) along with Mir Qasim and Shuja-ud-Daula against the British East India Company. He was defeated and was forced to sign the Treaty of Allahabad (1765) under which Diwani of Bengal was granted to Company. ● Diwani of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa. ● Became pensioner of the English.
Akbar II (1806 - 1837)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Gave Ram Mohan Roy the title of Raja. ● Introduced Hindu-Muslim unity festival Phool Walon ki Sair.
Bahadur Shah II (1837-1857)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Last Mughal Emperor ● Known as an Urdu Poet using Zafar as his pen name. ● Participated in the revolt of 1857 after which he was deported to Rangoon and died.

8.10 REASONS FOR DECLINE OF THE MUGHALS

- Lack of political stability after Aurangzeb.
- Most of the emperors became puppets in the hands of powerful Nobles who often ran administration on their behalf.
- Weak military and political administration as exposed by Nadir Shah and Ahmad Abdali's invasion.
- Emergence of autonomous states and hence weakening of central power.
- Orthodox policy of Aurangzeb: His attitude toward Marathas, Rajputs, and Jats made them his enemy, also his religious policies too alienated the Hindus.

8.11 JAGIRDARI SYSTEM

- It is the system of assignment of revenue of a particular territory to the nobles for their services to the state.
- It was an **integral part** of the **Mansabdari system**.
- Zamindars** had **hereditary rights over the produce** of the land and claimed a direct share in the peasants' produce which varied from 10% to 25% in different parts of the country.

Types of Jagirs	
Tankha Jagirs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Given in lieu of salary and were transferable every three to four years
Mashrut Jagirs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Were given on certain conditions
Watan Jagirs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Were assigned to zamindar or rajas in their local dominions. Were hereditary and non-transferable
Altamaha Jagirs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Given to Muslim nobles in their family towns or place of birth.

Important Terms and Meaning

- Diwan-i-Ala/Wazir:** Head of revenue department
- Mir Bakshi:** Head of military department
- Mir saman:** In charge of the imperial households.
- Barids:** Intelligence officers
- Waqia Navis:** Reporters
- Qazi:** Head of judicial department.
- Sadr-ul-sadr:** Incharge of charitable & religious endowments.
- Mutasaddi:** Governor of port
- Muqaddam:** Head of village
- Patwari:** Accountant

- Tainat-i-Rakab:** Reserved force
- Taccavi:** Loans provided for agriculture expansion.
- Merwars:** Postal runners
- Banik:** Local Traders
- Bitikchis:** Clerks
- Chehra:** Descriptive roll of every soldier
- Ahadis:** The "gentlemen troopers," who drew higher pay than ordinary servicemen under the mansabdari system.
- Khudkasht:** Peasants who owned the land they tilled.
- Khasa Kail:** Personal royal force maintained by Sher Shah.
- Qabooliyat system:** deed agreement between the peasant and the government.
- Guerrilla Warfare :** Irregular, small scale violent militant groups, operating in a hostile territory.
- Guerrilla Warfare :** Irregular, small scale violent militant groups, operating in a hostile territory.
- Kharkhanas :** These were areas where expensive craft products were produced.
- Dasturs :** The schedules containing money revenue rates for different localities applicable year after year.

8.12 BIHAR DURING THE MUGHAL PERIOD

Background

Bihar remained under Taj Khan Karrani, Suleman Khan and Dawood Khan Karrani etc. even after the fall of the Sur dynasty established by the great Afghan Emperor Sher Shah of Bihar. These Afghan rulers maintained their control over Bihar till 1580 AD. Suleman Khan ruled from 1556 AD to 1572 AD and extended his jurisdiction up to Orissa.

Bihar During Akbar's Period

- Dawood Khan Kararani, the son of Suleman Khan, adopted an arrogant attitude towards Akbar. As a result, Mughal ruler Akbar attacked Bihar in 1574 AD and took over Patna. Dawood Khan ran away.
- Bihar was completely under the Mughals from 1574 AD to 1580 AD. Bihar was declared as a province of the Mughal Empire.
- Muzaffar Khan remained the governor of Bihar till 1575-81 AD.
- Akbar had divided his empire into 12 provinces. Bihar was also a separate suba in it, whose governor was made Khan-e-Azam Mirza Aziz Kokaltas. At present the total income of Bihar is 22 crores i.e. Rs.55,47,98.**
- Minor leaders of Afghans Bahadur Khan, Adham Khan, Batni Khan, Dariya Khan Nuhani etc. revolted, which was suppressed by Muzaffar Khan.
- Muzaffar Khan crossed the Ganges and got help from Udai Singh Karan, the Zamindar of Champaran, attacked the rebels and won Hajipur.
- Muzaffar Khan reached again (near Marha Gandak river) after getting the news of the gathering of Afghans, but in this war the Mughal army was defeated and due to this defeat there was deep despair in the Mughal army, but Muzaffar Khan again organised the Mughal army and again defeated the Afghans. attacked the rebels.
- In this struggle Taj Khan Panwar fled and Afghan Jamal Khan Gilzai was arrested. After this, Muzaffar Khan remained the governor of Bihar till (1575-81 AD).

- Munim Khan established Mughal dominance by defeating Dawood Khan, the ruler of Bengal and Orissa, but after the death of Munim Khan in October 1575, Dawood Khan again took over the whole of Bengal.
- **Akbar sent Hussain Kuli as the governor of Bengal as well as sent 5000 army against Muzaffar Khan, the governor of Bihar.**
- In 1582 AD, Khan-e-Azam also returned to the royal court, but due to the outbreak of rebellion, he returned to Bihar again and he completely freed Bihar from rebellion.
- Said Khan was made the Subedar of Bengal.
- In 1587 AD, Kunwar Mansingh was appointed as the Subedar of Bihar. After the death of Raja Bhagwan Das in 1589 AD, Mansingh was given the title of Raja. He married the daughter of Raja Puranmal of Gidhaur.
- Raja Mansingh forced Raja Sangram Singh of Kharagpur and Raja Anant Singh of Chero to accept his submission.
- **Mansingh built a Shiva temple at Baikatpur between Fatuha and Khusrupur (Patna), where Mansingh's mother died.**
- **Jagat Singh, son of Raja Mansingh pacified the rebellious Sultan Kuli Kayamak and Kachena of Bengal (who were creating havoc in Tanjpur and Darbhanga of Bihar).**
- **In 1594, Saeed Khan became the Subedar of Bihar for the third time and remained till 1598.**
- In 1599 AD, when the Ujjain ruler Dalpat Shahi rebelled, Prince Daniyam, the governor of Allahabad, married his daughter.
- At the time of Akbar, Bihar remained the centre of war between the Pathans and the Mughals and Bhojpur and Ujjain maintained their close relations with the Pathans more than with the Mughals.
- **In the last days of Akbar, Bihar was mainly affected by the rebellion of Salim. Asaf Khan was appointed governor by removing the then governor Asad Khan.**

Bihar During the Time of Jahangir

- **When Jahangir ascended the throne of Delhi in 1605 AD, he appointed Lal Baig or Baz Bahadur as the governor of Bihar.**
- Baz Bahadur successfully suppressed the rebellion of Raja Sangram Singh of Kharagpur.
- **Baz Bahadur built Noorsarai (which according to local tradition is a mosque and a sarai) in Darbhanga. This Noorsarai was built during the stay of Mehrunisa (Noorjahan) on her way to Delhi from Bengal.**
- **1607 AD Baz Bahadur had received the title of Jahangir Quli Khan and was sent as the governor of Bengal.**
- After this Islam Khan became the governor of Bihar, but in 1608 he was also made the governor of Bengal.
- After Islam Khan, Abdurrahim or Afzal Khan, the son of Abul Fazal, was made the Subedar of Bihar and a rebellion named Qutubshah was successfully suppressed.
- After the death of Afzal Khan in 1613, Zafar Khan became the governor of Bihar.
- **In 1615, Nur Jahan's brother Ibrahim Khan became the governor of Bihar.**
- Ibrahim Khan was transferred as the governor of Bengal in 1617 AD and Jahangir Quli Khan II was appointed as the governor of Bihar till 1618 AD.
- 11618 AD Murkaro Khan was appointed as the Subedar of Bihar. He was a good doctor and businessman.
- **Shahzada Parvez was the first prince to become the governor of Bihar in 1621 AD. Mukhlis Khan used to help him in his administrative work.**
- A stone mosque was built in Patna in 1636 AD by Nahar Bahadur Khweshgi, an Afghan Sardar in Bihar.
- **In the period 1622-24 AD, Prince Khurram rebelled against the emperor. Khurram took away the authority of Parvez on the areas like Patna, Rohtas etc.**
- Khurram made Khan Durran (Bairam Beg) the governor of Bihar.
- On 26 October 1624, Prince Parvez's army defeated Khurram on the Tons river near Bahadurpur. Khurram went to Akbar Nagar via Patna, then reconciliation was done by Jahangir.
- **In 1626-27 AD, Mirza Rustam Efavi was made the governor of Bihar in place of Shahzada Parvez, who was the last governor of Jahangir**

Bihar During the Time of Shahjahan

- **Khan-e-Alam was made the Subedar of Bihar in 1628 AD, which remained for eight years. After this, Saif Khan, the governor of Gujarat, was made the governor of Bihar.**
- Governor Saif Khan had built the Saif Khan Madrasa in Patna in 1628-29 AD.
- In 1632 AD, Shah Jahan made his trusted Abdullah Khan Bahadur Firoz Jung the governor of Bihar. At this time the Ujjain ruler of Bhojpur revolted.

- The royal officer Shahnawaz Khan came to Bihar and along with Khan-i-Azam pacified Ujjain's Sardar Dalpat Shahi and other rebel Arab Bahadur.
- Shahnawaz was appointed Vizier after Raja Todermal returned to the royal court.
- **After Abdullah Khan, Shahsta Khan, brother of Mumtaz Mahal, was made the governor of Bihar (1639-43 AD).**
- **Shahsta Khan** defeated the Chero rulers in 1642 AD. After that he appointed Mirza Sapur or Ittihad Khan as the subedar of Bihar.
- From 1643 AD to 1646 AD, a campaign was again launched against the Chero ruler.
- In 1646, Azam Khan was appointed as the governor of Bihar. After that Sayeed Khan Bahadur Jung was made Subedar.
- In 1656 AD, Zulfikar Khan and in 1657 AD Allahvardi Khan took charge of the governorship of Bihar.
- The royal army under the leadership of Prince Suleman Shikoh and Mirza Raja Jaisingh defeated Prince Shuja and Allahvardi Khan.
- **In 1658, the Dutch established their warehouse in Patna.**
- Aurangzeb defeated Shuja in the Battle of Khajwa on 16 January 1659 and Shuja Bahadur reached the Rajmahal via Patna and Munger.

Bihar During the Time of Aurangzeb

- **When Aurangzeb became the emperor of Delhi, Dawood Khan Qureshi was appointed as the governor of Bihar.**
- He remained the governor of Bihar till 1664 AD. After Dawood Khan, in 1665, Lashkar Khan was made the governor of Bihar.
- It was during his reign that the English traveller Bernier came to Bihar. **He has mentioned general administration and the financial system in his travelogue. At that time Patna was the centre of saltpetre trade. He lived in Patna for eight years.**
- **In 1668 AD, Ibrahim Khan became the Subedar of Bihar by transferring Lashkar Khan. John Marshall came to Bihar during his reign. He has described a severe draught.**
- **Another Dutch traveller, De Graafy, also visited during the reign of Ibrahim. John Marshall has discussed various cities of Bihar like Bhagalpur, Munger, Fatuha and Hajipur.**
- After Ibrahim Khan, Amir Khan was appointed as the Subedar of Bihar for one year, after that in 1675, Tarviat Khan was appointed as the Subedar of Bihar.
- **In 1677 AD, Aurangzeb's son Shahzada Azam was appointed as the governor of Bihar.**
- During this period, a person named Gangaram revolted in Patna. Raja Rudrasingh of Bhojpur and Buxar also revolted unsuccessfully.
- Fida Khan remained the governor of Bihar from 1695 AD to 1702 AD. During this period there was unrest in Tirhut and Santhal Parganas (Jharkhand). Kunwar Dheer rebelled.
- **After Fida Khan, Prince Azim became the ruler of Bihar as well as Bengal.**
- Prince Azim being lazy and relaxed, soon the burden of power was given to Kartlab Khan, who later became known as Murshid Quli Khan.
- In 1704 AD, Prince Azim himself reached Patna. Due to administrative strength, the city (Patna) was named Azimabad. Later, Prince Azim went to suppress the rebellion of Alimardan.

Bihar After Aurangzeb's Period

- **When Aurangzeb died in 1707 AD and Bahadur Shah became the ruler in 1707 AD and remained the ruler of Delhi till 1712 AD, then Prince Azim remained on the post of Governor of Bihar. His name became Azim Ush Shan.**
- **When Bahadur Shah died in 1712 AD, Azim Ush Shan also tried to get the throne of Delhi, but he was unsuccessfully killed.**
- When Jahandar Shah became the emperor on the throne of Delhi, Azim Ush Shan's son Farrukhshiar was in Patna. He did his coronation and went to Agra for authority. Farrukhshiar defeated Jahandar Shah near Agra and became the emperor of Delhi.
- **Azim's son Farrukhshiar was the first Mughal emperor whose coronation took place in Bihar (in Patna).**
- **Minerals like saltpeter, diamond and marble were traded in Mughal period Bihar.**
- **From the reign of Farrukhshiar, the influence of a provincial administration of Bihar gradually decreased and the identity of a separate province ended.**
- Nusrat Khan was made the new governor of Bihar for the next five years.
- Later, Fakhruddaula became the Subedar of Bihar and launched a military campaign against Udwan Singh of Chhota Nagpur, Palamu (Jharkhand), Jagdishpur.

- The Daul Udal (Court of Justice) was built in Patna during the reign of Fakhruddin Daulah. But due to some reason, he was released from the post in 1734 AD.
- After the appointment of Fakhr-ud-daulah, Prince Mirza Ahmad was later appointed as the nominal official governor of Bihar.
- **Shujauddin sent his Vishwat Adhikari Alivardi Khan to Azimabad to look after the administration. He remained the Nawab of Azimabad (in Patna) from 1734 AD to 1740 AD. During his rule, he suppressed the rebellions of Bihar and increased the income of the state by developing a harsh system.**
- He used this increased income in the Bengal campaign.
- **After the death of Shujauddin in 1739, he became the independent Nawab of Bihar and Bengal by defeating Shujauddin's descendants in the Giryian war.**
- **At the same time, the threat of Marathas and Afghans increased on Bengal. The Afghans killed Haibatjung in 1748 AD.**
- Alivardi Khan himself pacified the Afghan rebels in the battle of Rani Sarai and Patna.
- He defeated the Marathas near Fatuha in 1751 AD, but the Marathas captured most of the areas of Orissa. In this the Maratha rebel was led by Raghu ji's son Bhanu ji.
- **After the death of Alivardi Khan in 1756, Sirajuddaulah became the Nawab of Bengal but Ramnarayan, an administrative officer, was made the Upanwab of Bihar.**
- In April, 1756, Siraj-ud-daulah sat on the throne of Bengal, as soon as he sat on the throne, he had to face the combined conspiracy of Shaukat Jang, Ghasiti Begum and her Diwan Raj Vallabh.
- Siraj-ud-daulah's strong enemy was Mir Jafar. He was the general of Alivardi Khan. Mir Jafar wanted to sit on the throne of Bengal by force, on the other hand, the British used to help the conspirators to have control over Bengal.
- As a result, on the question of trade facilities and due to non-honesty of following the terms of the Alinagar treaty in February, 1757 AD, there was a war between Clive and Nawab army in the field of Plassey on 23 June 1757.
- Sirajuddaulah was killed in the battle. After this Mir Jafar became the Nawab of Bengal. In this way, the Nawabi empire of Bihar, Bengal and Orissa gradually came to an end and the foundation of the British Empire was laid

PREVIOUS YEAR QUESTIONS

1. What was the main reason for Babur's victory in the battle of Panipat? [39th B.P.S.C.(Pre)1994]
 (a) His cavalry
(b) His military prowess
 (c) Tulgama system
 (d) Mutual disunity of the Afghan
2. In which language was 'Tuzuk-e-Babri' written? [B.P.S.C.(Pre)2015]
 (a) Persian (b) Arabic
(c) Turkey (d) Urdu
3. When did Humayun attack Chunar fort for the first time? [B.P.S.C. (Pre)2008]
(a) 1532 AD (b) 1531 AD
 (c) 1533 AD (d) 1536 AD
4. Who among the following got the tomb built for her emperor husband? [52th B.P.S.C. (Pre)2008]
 (a) Shah Begum
(b) Haji Begum
 (c) Mumtaz Mahal Begum
 (d) Noorunnisa Begum
5. Who composed 'Humayunnama'? [42nd B.P.S.C. (Pre)1997-98]
 (a) Babar
 (b) Humayun
(c) Gulbadan Begum
 (d) Jahangir



9.1 SHAHJI BHONSLE

- He was the descendant of the **Sisodias of Mewar** who was married to **Jija Bai**. She gave birth to **Shivaji** in **Shivner** near **Junnar** in **1630**.
- He served under **Malik Ambar** (1548-1626) who was earlier a slave and the Abyssinian minister under **Ahmed Shah** of **Ahmadnagar**. After the death of Ambar, Bhonsle played a vital role in politics.
- Jijabai and her minor son were left under the care of **Dadaji Kondadeo** who administered the jagirs of **Shahji Bhonsle at Poona**.

Additional Information

- **Shahji** acted as a **kingmaker** in **Ahmadnagar** and defied the Mughals. He yielded the territories under his dominion by a treaty signed in **1636** and joined services of sultan of Bijapur, turning his energies towards **Karnataka**.

9.2 SHIVAJI MAHARAJ (1627 - 1680 AD)

- Born at **Shivneri fort**.
- Father: **Shahaji Bhosle** initially served to Nizam ruler of Ahmednagar. Later he joined Bijapur.
- Mother of Shivaji: **Jija Bai**
- He inherited the **jagir of Poona** from his father in 1637.
- At the age of 16 he captured the Torna fort, followed by many more forts.
- He created an independent Maratha kingdom with **Raigad as its capital**.
- He captured Javali from Chandrarao More in 1656. At the **Battle of Pratapgarh** (1659) he killed Afzal Khan (Adil shah's general).
- **Battle of Pavankhind (1660)**: Maratha force led by Baji Prabhu Deshpande held back the larger enemy to buy time for Shivaji to escape.
- Shivaji was defeated by Shaista Khan (sent by Aurangzeb). Later he made a bold **attack on Shaista Khan's military camp** at Poona in 1663 & wounded him.
- **Treaty of Purandar (1665)**
 1. Signed between Raja Jai Singh (under Aurangzeb) and Shivaji.
 2. Shivaji ceded some forts to Mughals & **visited Agra to meet Aurangzeb**.

- He **defeated Mughals in the Battle of Salher** (1672). He was crowned & assumed the **title Maharaja Chhatrapati** in 1674 at Raigad fort.
- He died in 1680 at the age of 52.

Shivaji's Administration

- He **divided the territory into three provinces**. **Provinces** were divided into **Prants** which were subdivided into **Parganas or Tarafs**.
- Shivaji had a well organised Army & Navy. The regular army was called **Paga**, while the loose auxiliaries called **Silahdars** & were supervised by **Havildars**.
- **Salary in cash was paid to the regular soldier, though sometimes the chiefs received revenue grants (Saranjam)**.
- He was assisted by a council of ministers called **Ashtapradhan Mandal**. Each minister was directly responsible to **Shivaji** (No collective responsibility).

Ashtapradhan Mandal

1. **Peshwa (Mukhya Pradhan)**: Finance & general administration. Later became prime minister
2. **Senapati (Sar-i-Naubat)**: Military commander
3. **Majumdar (Amatya)**: Accountant General
4. **Waqenavis (Mantri)**: Intelligence, posts and household affairs
5. **Sachiv (Surnavis)**: Correspondence
6. **Dabir (Sumant)**: Foreign minister & Master of ceremonies
7. **Nyayadhish**: Chief Justice
8. **Panditrao (Sadar)**: High Priest, managing internal religious matters

Revenue

- The revenue system of Shivaji was **based on that of Malik Amber of Ahmednagar**.
- Land was measured using a measuring rod called **Kathi**.
- Discouraged revenue farming
- **Chauth (1/4th of land revenue)** paid to Marathas to avoid Maratha raids.
- **Sardeshmukhi** was an additional levy of ten percent, that is 1/10 of standard land revenue on those lands on which the Marathas claimed hereditary rights.
- Reduced the power of existing **Deshmukhs and Kulkarnis**.
- Appointed own revenue officer called **Karkuns**.

9.3 SAMBHAJI (1680 - 1689 AD)

- Sambhaji was the son of Shivaji Maharaj and as per Treaty of Purandar, he was a **Mansabdar of Mughals**.
- His rule was largely shaped by the ongoing wars between the Maratha kingdom and Mughal Empire as well as other neighbouring powers such as Siddis, Mysore and the Portuguese in Goa.
- In 1687, at the **Battle of Wai** he defeated Mughal forces.
- In 1689, Sambhaji was captured, tortured and executed by the Mughals.
- He was succeeded by his brother Rajaram I.

9.4 RAJARAM (1689 - 1707 AD)

- He was the younger brother of **Sambhaji** and he ruled on behalf of **Shahu**.
- **Jinji** became his headquarters. He fled to **Vishalgarh** and then to **Satara**, when his capital was attacked by the **Mughals**. He gave the status of king or **Hukumat Panha** to Peshwa **Ramchandra Pant**.
- Maratha leaders like **Dhanaji Jadhav**, **Ramchandra Pant** and **Prahlad Niraji** created widespread destruction among Mughals.

- After the death of **Rajaram**, resistance continued under the leadership of his widow, **Tara Bai** who assumed charge on behalf of her infant son **Shivaji II**.
- **Azamshah** released **Shahu**. Mughals were successful in dividing Marathas into two sections- One under the leadership of **Tara Bai** and second, under **Shahu**.
- At the **battle of Khed** in 1707, Shahu with the help of **Balaji Vishwanath** (Chitpavan Brahman who became Peshwa in 1713) defeated **Tara Bai**, but she carried on a parallel rival government with **Kolhapur** as capital.

Additional Information

- **Raja Bai** (second wife of Rajaram) and her son **Sambhaji II** imprisoned **Tara Bai** and her son in 1714. **Sambhaji II** ascended to the throne of **Kolhapur**. However, he had to accept the overlordship of **Shahu**.

9.5 SHAHU (1707- 1749 AD)

- Shahu's reign saw the **rise of Peshwas** & reducing Bhosale's to mere figureheads.
- By the time of **Rajaram II/Ram raja** the power of Chhatrapati was almost overshadowed by that of Peshwa.

9.6 BALAJI VISHWANATH (1713-1720 AD): FIRST PESHWA

- He started his career as a small revenue official. He was given a **title of Sena Karte in 1708 by Shahu**.
- He became a Peshwa in 1713 & made the post most important and powerful as well as hereditary.

Royal House of Kolhapur

Shivaji II (1710-1714)

- Son of Rajaram and Tarabai
- He was under the regency period of his mother.

Sambhaji II (1714-1760)

- Son of Rajabai and Rajaram
- Signed Treaty of Warna (1731) with Shahu to formalise the two separate seats of the Bhonsle family.

Expeditions were sent against Kolhapur by British government in 1765 and 1792 and the state entered into a treaty with the British after the collapse of the Maratha Confederacy in 1812.

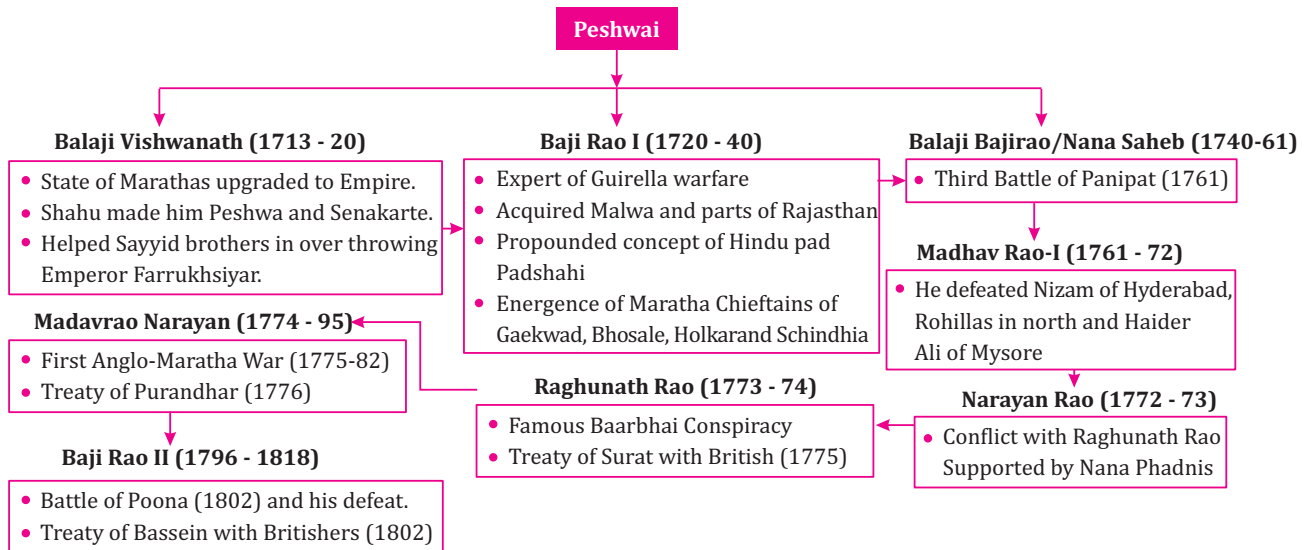


Fig. 9.1: Peshwai



Maratha Confederacy

10.1 BAJI RAO I (1720-1740 AD)

- **Succeeded Balaji Vishwanath.** Maratha power reached its **zenith** under him.
- Was one of the greatest exponents of **guerrilla tactics** after Shivaji.
- **Initiated the system of confederacy.** Thus, many families became prominent and established their authority.
- He **captured Salsette and Bassein from the Portuguese** in the **Battle of Vasai (1733)**. He **defeated Nizam-ul-Mulk in 1737** & concluded the **Treaty of Durai Sarai**.
- His several expeditions in the north **weakened the Mughal** and made Marathas supreme power in India.
- **He said about the Mughal: "Let us strike at the trunk of the withering tree and the branches will fall off themselves".**

10.2 BALAJI BAJI RAO (NANA SAHIB I) (1740-1761 AD)

- **Defeated Nawab of Bengal Alivardi Khan in 1751** and 1/3rd of the Indian Subcontinent came under the Maratha empire.
- **Signed agreement with Ahmad Shah (Mughal emperor)** - Peshwas assured to protect the Mughal from internal and external enemies in return for the Chauth of the north-west provinces, total revenue of Agra & Ajmer provinces.
- **Defeat at the 3rd Battle of Panipat 1761** by **Ahmad Shah Abdali** checked the expansion of Marathas and fragmented the empire.
- He and his son Vishwas Rao died in the Panipat battle.
- **Successor: Madhav Rao, Narayan Rao, Sawai Madhav Rao and Baji Rao II.**

10.3 ANGLO MARATHA WARS

- There were three wars fought between the Maratha Empire and the British East India Company over territory.
- **The Third Anglo-Martha war led to the end of the Maratha Empire.** All the Maratha powers surrendered to the British.

- The Peshwa was eventually captured and placed on a small estate at Bithur, near Kanpur.
- The Maharaja of Satara was restored as the ruler of his territory as a princely state. Most of his territory was annexed and became part of the Bombay Presidency.
- In 1848 this territory was also **annexed under the doctrine of lapse policy** of Lord Dalhousie.

First Anglo-Maratha War (1775-1782 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Struggle of Power between Sawai Madhav Rao and Raghunath Rao was supported by the British and resulted in the First Anglo-Maratha War. • The Treaty of Salbai in May, 1782 - British acknowledged Madhavrao as the Peshwa of the Maratha Empire and ended the Anglo-Maratha War. • Treaty of Surat, 1775 • Treaty of Purandar, 1776
Second Anglo-Maratha War (1803-05 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The second war was caused by the peshwa Baji Rao II defeat by the Holkar (one of the leading Maratha clans) and his acceptance of the subsidiary alliance (Treaty of Bassein) in 1802. • Unhappy Maratha confederacy challenged the British power but got defeated.
Third Anglo-Maratha War (1817-1818 AD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Distressed By low income Pindaris made up of many castes and started plundering neighbouring territories, including those of companies. • Lord Hasting (Governor General) charged Marathas with giving shelter to the Pindaris and hence fought the war. • Maratha warlords fought separately instead of forming a common front and they surrendered one by one.

10.4 POPULAR MARATHA CHIEFTAINS

Kingdoms	Territory
Scindia	Gwalior
Holkar	Indore
Pawar	Dhar
Gaekwad	Baroda
Bhosale	Nagpur
Peshwa	Poona

Bhonsles of Nagpur	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Raghoji Bhonsle (1727-55 AD) was the most important ruler of this clan. He is often credited for extending the Maratha influence in Bihar and Bengal.
Gaekwads of Baroda	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The Gaikwad family rose into prominence during the 1720s. ● They established their capital at Baroda (Vadodara, Gujarat).

Holkars of Indore	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Malhar Rao Holkar established his power at Indore (Madhya Pradesh). ● It was under Malhar Rao reign that Holkar's power reached its zenith.
Sindhias of Gwalior	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The Sindhias were among the most powerful and influential families of the Marathas. ● Mahadji Sindhia established his control over the Mughal emperor Shah Alam II in 1784. ● He secured the appointment of the Peshwa as the Emperor's Deputy Naib-i-Munai on the condition that Mahadji would act on behalf of the Peshwa.

